

355 (S) Foh. Richards, Walter

# HER MAJESTY'S INDIAN AND COLONIAL FORCES



11th BENGAL NATIVE INFANTRY

LONDON: J. S. VIRTUE & CO., LTD.



THE 6th REGIMENT OF CAVALRY (HUSSARS, CANADA).



15th SIKH



THE CAPE MOUNTED RIFLES





THE 3<sup>d</sup> GOORKHAS.



THE 2nd QUEEN'S OWN RIFLES (CANADA).



HER MAJESTY'S ARMY  
INDIAN AND COLONIAL  
FORCES

*A DESCRIPTIVE ACCOUNT*

OF THE

VARIOUS REGIMENTS NOW COMPRISING THE QUEEN'S FORCES IN  
INDIA AND THE COLONIES

BY

WALTER RICHARDS

*With Coloured Illustrations*

*IN TWO DIVISIONS*

DIV. II.

LONDON

J. S. VIRTUE & CO., LIMITED

294, CITY ROAD AND 26, IVY LANE

and with an Armstrong gun planted on the platform at the top of them, seem of undeniable utility in protecting the entrance of the St. Lawrence, and the Rideau Canal to Ottawa. At the mouth of the Niagara river is our only other fortification along the lake. Within three hundred yards of a similar building on the American side, stands Fort St. George, the smaller and less pretentious of the two, but apparently of greater strength and solidity than the lath-and-plaster-looking barrack on the opposite shore."

Near Niagara, some fifteen miles or so from the city of that name, once more important than now, is rising a village and town in the neighbourhood of which many events in "the history of Canada have taken place, the battle of Queenstown Heights, memorable for the victory and death of Brock; the battle of Lundy's Lane; and in later years, the celebrated seizure of the *Caroline*."

The constitution of the present Militia Force is as follows:—

Cavalry: Fourteen Regiments, inclusive of the School Corps and Body Guard and four Independent Troops.

Field Artillery: Seventeen Brigades.

Garrison Artillery: Nineteen Brigades.

Mountain Artillery: One Brigade.

Engineers: Three Companies.

Mounted Infantry: One Company.

Infantry: Ninety-six Brigades, exclusive of the Infantry School Corps and the Governor-General's Foot Guards. Three independent companies.

The military districts are Ontario, Quebec, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Manitoba, British Columbia, Prince Edward Island. Ontario is divided into four districts, having eight Brigade Divisions; Quebec into three, having the same number; New Brunswick is one, having three Brigade Divisions; Nova Scotia is one, having the same number; Manitoba, British Columbia, and Prince Edward Island respectively constitute the 10th, 11th, and 12th Military Districts. Bearing in mind what we have before observed as to the dates of the present organization, it will be seen that the existing regiments *as such* are unable to make the claim of corporate identity with the old corps whose names have been made so familiar by their prowess at Quebec, Lake George, Queenstown, and Chateaugay, and by the leadership of Brock and Prevost, Macknab, Robinson, and Evans. The early chronicle of the Militia achievements has been thus summarized: "The Canadian Militia is celebrated in history; and if agricultural industry and peaceful occupations have during late years led them to abandon the sword-hilt for the

plough-handle, there is no reason to doubt that in younger veins there still flows the blood of the gallant North-East Loyalists, and the descendants of those who fought with Carleton and Brock are inspired with the same patriotism and horror of annexation that nerved the hardy muscles of their ancestors. In 1775, during the first aggression of the States after their renunciation of allegiance, it was chiefly owing to the Militia of the province that the enemy, after a brief winter campaign, in which Montgomerie was killed under the walls of Quebec, were driven back across the frontier. Again, in the war of 1812, when tardy reinforcements from England added but little to the strength of the regulars, it was to the local Militia that General Brock and Sir George Prevost were chiefly indebted for successes which terminated in a peace signed at Ghent in 1814, a peace by no means satisfactory to the Canadians, who were just beginning to turn the tables on the invaders by frequent inroads upon American territory."

We shall glance very briefly at the events which led to the capture of Canada; to the revolt of the colonies which cemented the new-welded relationship of the Dominion and mother country; to the war of 1812, aptly described as "an episode in the story of a young people glorious in itself and full of promise." We shall refer to the warlike occurrences of the present reign, in which many individuals of the present army have distinguished themselves, and we shall trace as far as is possible within our limits the history of the existing corps, and their connection, transmitted or actual, with the struggles of the country.

"Ancient history" is falling out of fashion, yet it is doubtful whether many works have been written of late years equalling in interest the now well-nigh forgotten works, *Montcalm and Wolfe*, or Knox's History of the Louisbourg and Quebec expeditions. We obtain glimpses of British soldiers fighting in an unknown territory, under unfamiliar circumstances, against foes formidable for their very strangeness. We see the Indian, round whom novelists have wrought so strange a glamour of sentiment and romance, in his true colours, in which mingle all shades of lust, ferocity, and squalor, brightened by gleams of savage heroism and untaught chivalry. We see the Provincials—English and French—exhibiting with the traditional qualities of their race characteristics acquired in prairie warfare and settlement raid. When the struggle commenced, "the English occupied a mere patch of land on the eastern seaboard of America, hemmed in on all sides by the French, who occupied not only Canada in the north and Louisiana in the south, but possessed a chain of posts connecting them, so cutting off the English from all access to the vast countries of the west." The English colonists, though superior

in number to the French, and possessing the colonising instinct, in which they are unrivalled, were weakened by interprovincial divisions and jealousies, and were thus able to render but fitful assistance to the royal troops at the commencement of the struggle. They had, however, an important source of strength in the friendship which the traders had cultivated with the Indians. So effectively, indeed, had they shown the latter the identity of their interests with British supremacy, that in 1751 the emissary of the French Governor of Canada reported that English influence was supreme in the valley of Ohio. The first overt act of hostilities was the capture of an English fort garrisoned by forty men by a French force of some five hundred, shortly followed by the surprise by Washington, at the head of the Virginia regiment, of a reconnoitring body of the enemy. Events marched fast then. England and France were formally at war, the imprudent appointment of General Braddock to the command of the British troops gave a temporary advantage to the French. Virginians and Canadians were pitted against each other at Little Meadows and Lake George; Mohawks and Iroquois were ranged on opposite sides; Lyman led the men of Connecticut and Massachusetts to victory against Dieskau. Then appeared on the scene the giants of the conflict, Montcalm, de Levis, Vaudreuil; Amherst, Howe, and Wolfe. The massacre at Fort William Henry was followed by the destruction of the French settlements on the Gulf of St. Lawrence; while the French were successful at Ticonderoga, the English captured Louisbourg and Duquesne, and destroyed Fort Frontenac. Of the sixteen thousand troops whom Montcalm commanded at Quebec a large portion were Canadians; with Wolfe were several provincial regiments from New England. During the siege the British commander issued proclamations calling upon the Canadians to stand neutral and promising them full protection of their lives and liberties, a promise eloquently prophetic of what was shortly after—and ever since—to be observed. There is no need to describe how Quebec was captured, but in pages devoted to the early history of the Provincial Militia it will not be out of place to emphasize the fact that it was at the head of the Louisbourg Grenadiers that the heroic Wolfe met his death. The victory was followed by the flight of the French; before long Montreal—the old Mont Royal of the days of Cartier—was besieged by the English; and “on the 8th September, 1760, Vaudreuil signed the capitulation by which Canada and all its dependencies passed to the English Crown.”

It was but natural that some friction should exist in a country thus transferred abruptly from one power to another, and whose population was composed of the compatriots of their past and present co-subjects. No drastic measures were taken, such as

those the fictitious causes and consequences of which have been immortalised in the sweet stately lines of "Evangeline." It is, of course, somewhat heartrending to realise that the simple Acadian farmers, whom their eulogist describes as aliko

"free from  
Fear that reigns with the tyrant, and envy, the vice of republics,"

should, according to the prosaic muse of actual history, have refused in despite of treaties to give up their "allegiance to the crown of France, erected forts, and in various ways sought to aid their countrymen in a project for conquering the province." Yet so, undoubtedly, it was, and considering the position of Great Britain at the time, it is scarcely to be wondered at if the Government of George III. considered that so much patriotism should be transferred from a state where it was not to be distinguished from treason. Five years later, when all the colonies belonging to France in North America became the property of England, the pastoral dwellers in Acadie were allowed to return to their homes in the fruitful valley on the condition of their avowing themselves British subjects. When Canada was surrendered to Great Britain the population, English and French, were left to "settle themselves." After a few years legislation was tried, but without much effect so far as removing the grievances of the mixed population, and in 1775 the rebellious States of America thought they had but to speak the word and Canada would hasten to throw off her allegiance. Never was expectation so falsified. "The sometime French on the north of the St. Lawrence had no sympathy with the sometime English on the south. They welcomed the crowd of loyalists, as they were called, who crossing the river, came to continue their allegiance to the British Crown in Quebec and Montreal, and prompt measures were taken to renew the defences of the border, and to support the mother country in her efforts to suppress the revolution. Old Canadians who had done battle with British troops now prepared to fight by their side, and colonial loyalists who had lately taken part with their brethren in the conquest of Canada now made ready to turn their arms against their former comrades."\* It was to be no exhibition of mere lip loyalty. An army of between four and five thousand men at once invaded the north; Chambly, St. John's, and Montreal were captured by Montgomery, and the outlook became gloomy. We cannot better summarize the results of the American attempt upon Canada than in the words of the writer above quoted:—"But Benedict Arnold (in

\* Fox Bourne, "The Story of Our Colonies."



command of another division of the invading force) fared ill in his attempt upon Quebec. Scant provisions and bad weather caused trouble on the march, and the garrison of Quebec held out till it was reinforced by fugitives from Montreal and the other captured forts. The conquerors of these forts passed down the St. Lawrence to aid their comrades, and in December the whole besieging force was united, under Montgomery, to attack Quebec, in which nearly all the defenders of the Colony were congregated. They were not thought very formidable. Only nine hundred British troops were there, and it was expected that the civilians under arms would easily be turned from their allegiance. But they were firm and brave. On the 8th of December Montgomery summoned the town to surrender. His flag was fired upon, and his messengers were ignominiously expelled. After some other futile efforts, Montgomery attempted to surprise the town by a device similar to that in which, as a subordinate, he had shared with Wolfe sixteen years before. Like Wolfe, he paid for his valour with his life on the heights of Abraham. But there the likeness ended. The assailants, panic-stricken at their loss, hastily retreated; and in spite of the energy shown by Arnold, they refused to repeat the attack. They loitered in Canada and its neighbourhood for several months, and reinforcements came from New England. But reinforcements also came from Old England. The intruders were expelled step by step from Montreal and all the other forts which they had taken, and in September, 1776, the wreck of the invading army went home to report that the attempt to conquer Canada was hopeless." May such be the lament of all who at any time threaten or attempt the conquest—not of Canada alone—but of any particle of land over which waves the meteor flag! In this war of loyalty against rebellion did the soldiers of British Canada first act together, and if we do not dwell at greater length on their achievements it is because we shall find more visible traces of the origin of the present military system in the war of 1812, a war which the incidents of the rebellion of the States rendered inevitable. As an historian aptly puts it: "The people on both sides were dissatisfied with the results of the contest. Neither had had enough; each had still an old grudge to settle. The British were keen for a fight, the Americans were keener, and grasped at the first inviting opportunity."

This war, as did the rebellion, found the Canadians still chafing and immersed in domestic and internal dissensions, and once again did the Americans calculate on a half-hearted resistance, if not on a general adherence. It was even asserted by a Minister in Congress that America could take Canada without soldiers. "We have only to send officers into the provinces, and the people, disaffected towards their own government,

will rally round our standard." Again was the expectation disappointed. The Americans judged others by themselves; they had found rebellion sit easily enough on their own shoulders, and naturally expected that the Canadians, because they had grievances which they wished to be redressed, would with equal facility throw fealty to the winds. The splendid militia battalions raised within six weeks by the Dominion gave an answer easy to be understood. The Canadians "desired justice from England, but they had no wish to swerve from their allegiance, and they had no liking for the republicanism, in their judgment violent and offensive, of the United States." Probably, too, an innate sense of chivalry prevented them from choosing this moment of all others for adding to the troubles which threatened the very existence of Great Britain, as the successive waves of some ocean tempest assault with ever crescent fury the stout old ship which rides them so fearlessly. "Three days after the American declaration of war," writes Alison, "Wellington crossed the Agueva to commence the Salamanca campaign. Six days after, Napoleon passed the Niemen on his way to Moscow at the head of 380,000 men." At the actual outbreak of the war the military strength of Canada was very weak. Irrespective of the regiments of the regular army, the Upper and Lower Provinces between them did not amount to 4,000 men "not all called out, unarmed and undisciplined, and possessing little of the appearance and quality of soldiers, except pluck." War was declared on the 18th June, 1812; before barely three weeks had elapsed the American General Hull invaded Canada; on the 17th July Captain Roberts with two hundred men, of whom a hundred and sixty were Canadian Voyageurs, captured the American fort on Mackinaw Island; before a month was over the gallant Brock led the York Volunteers to the capture of Detroit. This was the first occasion on which the Militia had been engaged, and all Canada was electrified. And well it might be. Brock's force was about 400 militia, 300 regulars, and the allied levies of the Shawanee Indians numbering some six or seven hundred. By the capitulation extorted from the Americans, "the whole of the Michigan territory, Fort Detroit, a ship of war, thirty-three pieces of cannon, stores to correspond and military chest, 2,500 troops, and one stand of colours" were surrendered to the British. Such was the first syllable of the answer to the American boast, "We have the Canadians as much at our command as Great Britain has the ocean."

The Canadian Voltigeurs and Fencibles were actively employed in guarding the frontier, and so efficient had the Militia become, that when what Christie describes as "a light brigade of élite" was formed under the command of Colonel Young of the King's, the Fencibles and the flank companies of the embodied Militia were included in it. The

Americans, meanwhile, were concentrating their forces, and showed some activity at Niagara and Detroit. Some skirmishes and a smart naval exploit on the part of Lieutenant Elliot, made the Americans arrogantly sanguine; they were going to walk through Canada and annihilate the British Power.\* The Canadian Militia bided their time. Under the energetic command of the gallant Brock they were becoming a strong and imposing army, and the battle of Queenstown Heights gave a stern check alike to the braggadocio and the advance of the rebel army. The victory at Queenstown Heights was a memorable event in the history of the Canadian Militia; in the roll of the conquering regiments we find the titles which still linger in the Canadian Army; in the Militia list of to-day are still to be read the names which had become as household words, on the 13th of October, when

"Many a darkness into the light had leapt  
And shone in the sudden making of glorious names."

"There is not," writes the eloquent historian of the war, "on this continent a more imposing situation or a lovelier scene than is presented from the noble plateau immortalised as Queenstown Heights. Rising in rich undulation from the alluvial shore which, at a distance of seven miles, subsides into Lake Ontario, they form the height of land through which, for twenty miles back, the river and cataract of Niagara cleave their resistless way. They trend away westerly until they reach Hamilton, and constitute the great embankment which dams back the superincumbent waters of Lake Erie. The noble river, boiling, rushing, eddying,—which, 500 yards wide, rushes through the gorge at the right-hand side of the spectator, now spanned by a gossamer bridge, 800 feet of wire tracery,—separates, as with a barrier of steel, the 'clearings' of experiment from the domain of experience—the United States from British territory. In the early morning before day broke, the desperate few of the enemy, the 'forlorn hope,' had manned the first boats, and under the command of Colonel Van Ranselaer, gained the Canadian shore. The force there stationed consisted of two companies of the 49th and about 200 of the York Militia. One 18-pounder gun was in position, on a spur of the heights, and a carronade raked the river from a point about a mile below. The American force, covered by the fire of two 18-pounders and two field-pieces from their own side, effected a landing with little loss. One officer was slain in the boats by a ball from the gun at the point.

\* The following extract from the Brock Correspondence thoroughly bears out the contention that the people on both sides were, as Napier would put it, "of a ready temper for battle." Colonel Baines, in relating his visit to Denbora, writes of the American Militia:—"I found a very general prejudice prevailing with Jonathan of his own resources and means of invading these provinces, and of our weakness and inability to resist, both exaggerated in most absurd and extravagant degree."

More troops and some militiamen crossed, until about 1,300 men were in line, and in front of them the British outposts. The resistance made was desperate, the assailants were as resolute. The voices of the American officers could be heard above the rattle of the musketry with the cry of 'On, men! on! for the honour of America.' The reply again was a dogged cheer and the rattle of musketry. In a short time Colonel Van Ranselaer was desperately wounded in four places. Good men and officers had fallen around him. The captains commanding the 40th companies had both fallen wounded. The fire of the 18-pounder was of no avail in that part of the field. It would have been more fatal to friend than to foe. At this moment Brock rode up. Awakened at daybreak by the firing, and fully anticipating attack, he called for his good horse Alfred, and, followed by his staff, galloped up from Fort George. He passed without drawing rein through the village, reached the 18-pounder battery, dismounted, and was covering the field through his telescope, when a fire was opened on the rear of the field work from a height above, which had been hardily gained during this brief interval by Captain Wool and a detachment of American regulars, up an almost inaccessible fisherman's path. The volley was promptly followed by a rush; Brock and his suite had no time to remount; they quickly retired with the twelve men who manned the battery. There was neither space, nor time, nor thought for generalship—all was sheer fighting. Williams, of the 49th, with a detachment of 100 strong, charged up the hill against Wool's men, who were repelled, but reinforced, charged again; notwithstanding which 'in the struggle which ensued the whole were driven to the edge of the bank.' Here, with the storming foe before them, a precipice of 180 feet behind, and the roaring Niagara beneath, some craven spirit quailed—an attempt was made to raise the white flag—Wool tore it down and trampled it under foot. The re-inspired regulars opened a scathing fire of musketry. Brock, who, in front, roused beyond himself, had forgotten the general in the soldier, conspicuous by his height, dress, gesture, and undaunted bearing, was pointing to the hill, and had just shouted, 'Push on the brave York Volunteers,' when he was struck by a ball in the right breast, which passed through his left side. He fell. His last words were, that his death should be concealed from his men, and that his remembrance should be borne to his sister; and thus died a brave soldier, an able leader, and a good man, who honoured by his life and ennobled by his death the soil on which he bled, and whose name remains, ever beloved and respected, a household word and a household memory in Canada."

The fight was yet undetermined. The "brave York Volunteers," with their dead

chief's last words ringing in their ears, pushed on, and by their fierce charge forced the enemy to spike their gun and retire, but even as they charged MacDonnell who led them fell mortally wounded. The position of both parties was critical, but that of the Americans the more so, owing to the unreliable character of many of the provincial levies. These men who but a few days before had been loudest in shouting "Forward" were now the stubbornest in holding back. The brave Wool was fighting gallantly and desperately in their very sight, but these heroes who were so determined to "do or die," now quailed at the sight of danger, and urged qualms of conscience and constitutional scruples as a plea for their poltroonery. Canada, forsooth, was not New York State, and they could not lawfully risk their precious lives, except in defence of their native soil.\* General Sheaffe now took command of the Royal troops. Advancing from Fort George with about eight hundred men, including companies of the Lincoln and Chippewa Militia, he attacked the Americans on their front and left. The end came quickly now. "The Americans fought on manfully but hopelessly. The fatal semicircle narrowed more and more—a volley here—scattered shots there—amid the wild yell of the Indian, the shout of the soldier, the shriek of the wounded, the hoarse word of command, amid smoke and dust, and tumult, and groans and execration, the last vengeful rush was made, and every living American swept from the summit of that blood-stained hill. . . . Major-General Wadsworth and about 1,100 American officers and soldiers surrendered, unconditionally, prisoners of war. The American loss by bullet, steel, and flood had been near 400 men."

We have said that the victory at Queenstown Heights was a memorable one for the Canadian army. Amongst the provincial troops engaged were Cameron's, Howard's, and Chisholme's companies of the York Militia; Crook's and McEwen's flank companies of the 1st Lincoln; Nellie's and W. Crook's companies of 4th Lincoln; Hale's, Durand's, and Applegate's companies of the 5th Lincoln; Major Merritt's Yeomanry corps, and a party of Swayzee's Militia Artillery; Captain R. Hamilton's and Stone's flank companies of the 2nd Lincoln and Volunteer Sedentary Militia.

But we will continue the retrospect of the war. A strong body of Americans† attacked Fort St. Regis, garrisoned by Lieutenant Rototte and some twenty men. After some sharp fighting, in which the lieutenant and seven men were killed, the remainder were taken prisoners. Mr. Coffin adds: "In a cupboard of the wigwam of the Indian Interpreter was found a Union Jack, on gala days the worthy object of

\* Coffin.

† Numbering about four hundred.

Indian adoration. This windfall was announced to the world as the 'Capture of a stand of colours.' 'The first colours taken during the war.' Dozens of them might have been obtained at far less cost in any American shipyard." Retaliation followed swiftly. Colonel McMillan led some hundred and forty men of the Cornwall and Glengarry Militia, with some of the Welsh Regiment, against the American Fort at Salmon River. The Loyalist troops were little more than a third of the number which captured the "first stand of arms during the war" at St. Regis, and the garrison was at least twice as strong as the devoted little band under Rototte. The result, however, was that "one captain, two subalterns, and forty-one men were taken, with four batteaux and fifty-seven stand of arms." The Cornwall and Glengarry men cannot be accused of parsimony in the return of compliments.

If it is true that "ridicule kills," the Canadians may be credited with the practical annihilation of the American General Smyth, nicknamed by his ungrateful countrymen General Von Bladder. The pictures illustrating the fable of the frog and the ox are familiar to all, and it needs but to give to the ox the features of the great Napoleon, and to the frog those of the redoubtable Smyth, to thoroughly appreciate the position. A lively, if flippant, historian of our own day, in describing the tension which existed between England and the United States fifty years later, wrote, "Mr. Seward always was a terribly eloquent dispatch writer." Smyth was beyond all expression eloquent—or what he intended to be eloquent—as a proclamation utterer. The most bombastic addresses of Napoleon were, to use a colloquialism, scarcely "in it," with those which Smyth promulgated. His army was styled the "Army of the Centre," and the things that army was going to accomplish were terrifying to contemplate. Smyth began by capturing, at the head of four hundred men, a battery manned by between sixty and seventy British. He then retreated, leaving a garrison of about the same number, who were promptly all made prisoners after a feeble resistance. He then made another demonstration in force, which one gun and some musketry threw into confusion, and General Von Bladder collapsed under a thousand punctures of contempt and indignation.

With the dawn of 1813 the Canadian Militia made another leap towards lusty life and vigour. "In addition to the force already raised, the Militia was augmented by a draft in Lower Canada. A battalion was embodied in Quebec (the 6th) for garrison duty. A Canadian Vencible Regiment, a regiment of Glengarries, and a regiment of Voltigeurs were recruited diligently and with success. The New Brunswick regular regiment (the 104th) in the month of March explored, for the first time, the wintry wilderness

lying between Fredericton, on the river St. John, and the St. Lawrence." With regard to the Voltigeurs, an extract from the *Quebec Gazette* of 1812 gives the following reference to this renowned corps.

"This corps (of Voltigeurs) now forming under the command of Major de Salaberry, is completing with a despatch worthy of the ancient warlike spirit of the country. Captain Perrault's company was filled up in forty-eight hours, and was yesterday passed by His Excellency the Governor; and the companies of Captains Duchesnay, Panet, and L'Ecuyer have now nearly their complement. The young men move in solid columns towards the enlisting officers with an expression of countenance not to be mistaken. The Canadians are awaking from the repose of an age secured to them by good government and virtuous habits. Their anger is fresh, the object of their preparation simple and distinct. They are to defend their King, known to them only by acts of kindness, and a native country long since made sacred by the exploits of their forefathers." The newly-raised troops had soon opportunity to flesh their maiden blades. In January, Proctor, at the head of some Regulars and Militia, completely defeated Harrison at French Town, with a loss of two hundred and fifty killed, and five hundred and thirty prisoners, including three field officers and Harrison himself. In February it was determined to make a demonstration against Ogdensburg, a strong military post on the American side of the St. Lawrence, and occupied by a somewhat formidable garrison. This demonstration was led by Colonel MacDonnell, the commanding officer of the Glengarry Fencibles. Something like personal feeling spurred MacDonnell on this occasion. He had been insulted by the American leaders; had, in fact, been actually challenged to measure his strength against theirs on the frozen arena of the mighty St. Lawrence. He was ready enough to pick up the gauntlet, and his men, the Glengarries, raised entirely in Central Canada, were every whit as eager as was he. These Glengarries, of whom we shall hear more later on, were the immediate successors of the old Scottish loyalists, who, as early as 1785, had begun to emigrate to the Dominion, and to whom were added, almost bodily, the old Glengarry Regiment raised by MacDonnell of Glen Urquhart for the British service, and disbanded in 1803. These fine soldiers were, thanks to the exertions and interest of their founder and chaplain, allowed to emigrate *en masse* to the colony already peopled by many of their kindred. Jacobites and Hanoverians, Tories and Whigs, Catholic and Protestant, they were now all united for the old country. They might cavil as to the extent of the royal prerogative, but they had nothing in common with the men who had discarded

prerogative and loyalty alike, and so, as the historian puts it, "regardless of names, genealogies, or dynasties, they looked to the principle, and whether it was for James, or whether it was for George, struck heartily home to the abiding sentiment of Claverhouse :—

'Ere the King's crown comes down, there are crowns to be broke.'

These were the men that stern old MacDonnell led against Ogdensburg. He amused the enemy for awhile by feigning to be merely exercising. When he had thus lessened the distance, forming his men into two columns, he dashed across. Though met by a heavy fire, the left column, commanded by the chief himself, carried all before them, and then by terrible exertions got their guns up to the front. The right wing, commanded by Captain Jenkins of the Glengarries, had a harder task. Straight in front of him were seven guns well supported. The column was broken, as well it might be, yet none shrank from his cheery "Come on!" His left arm was hit; still he led them on. Then the uplifted sword sank as his right arm was shattered. Still his voice failed not nor his gestures till he fell from loss of blood, still, it is pleasing to relate, to be spared to his king and country for many years. The Glengarries pushed home, MacDonnell's cannon opened against their assailants, and Ogdensburg was captured. Amongst those who distinguished themselves were Captain Lefebvre, of the Royal Newfoundland Regiment, Colonel Frazer, Lieutenants Empey and M'Aulay, and Ensigns MacDonnell, Kerr, and Mackay, all of the Glengarries and other Militia troops. The men of the Glengarries and Militia fought again at York and Fort St. George, vindicating their gallantry against irresistible odds. In the attack upon Sackett Harbour, Newfoundlanders, Glengarries, and Voltigeurs fought side by side with some of the most famous regiments in the royal army. The Militia again contributed in part to the brilliant affair at Thorold, where Lieutenant Fitzgibbon of H.M.'s 49th, with some 30 men and some Indians, took prisoner Colonel Bærstler of the American army with "542 men, two field-guns, and the colours of the 14th U.S. Regiment." Though not directly, save as above mentioned, bearing on the triumphs of the Canadian Army proper, the incident is so replete with gratifying interest to all subjects of Her Majesty's Empire that we will briefly relate it. Fitzgibbon, with some 30 men of H.M.'s 49th, was in garrison at Beaver's Dam. This the Americans determined to capture, and a force of nearly 700 men under Bærstler was told off for the purpose. Fortunately, the projected expedition, though kept studiously quiet, became known to a worthy Canadian named Secord, invalided from the Militia by wounds received at



Queenstown Heights, who was then residing within the American lines. He and his wife determined to give warning to Fitzgibbon. But the journey was twenty miles, Secord was a cripple, and the American pickets were terribly on the alert. His wife determined to go. By a judicious exercise of woman's wit, she managed to dispel the suspicions of the sentries, and then, through a country infested by wolves and snakes, and swarming with Indians whose political bias was unknown, she journeyed on, till at nine o'clock of that same evening she reached the threatened garrison. Forewarned is forearmed with such men as Fitzgibbon. He sent off to Major de Haren of his regiment with the tidings, and awaited the attack. The American force in due course set out, but soon found themselves opposed by some Indians, who harassed their progress, and by a sharp fusilade from some ambushed militiamen. Fitzgibbon then assumed the offensive. Coming upon Børstler's force "scared out of their senses" by the Militia and Indians, he disposed his 30 men—about a twentieth of his opponents!—to the best advantage, and summoned Børstler to a parley. Making the most of the Militia and Indians, and dwelling with repeated emphasis on the expected reinforcements under de Haren, he convinced Børstler that his best course was to capitulate. Even then the position was embarrassing. The American force was ludicrously in excess of his own, but, fortunately, de Haren arrived in the nick of time, and the brilliant feat of arms was accomplished.\* Shortly afterwards, another dashing exploit was performed by Colonel Clark, of the 2nd Lincoln, who, taking advantage of the 4th of July festivities on the part of the Americans, crossed the river and captured Fort Schlosser, bringing back a considerable amount of booty and some 15 prisoners. A detachment of the same regiment—the 2nd Lincoln—with some men of the 3rd, accompanied Colonel Bishopp and their own commander, Clark, in the equally brilliant capture of Black Rock.

The end of the campaign was approaching, but ere its close round one body of Canadian soldiers was to flash a blaze of glory whose gleam is still undimmed. We refer to the Voltigeurs raised by Colonel de Salaberry. On the retreat of the American general, Hampton, Salaberry followed in swift pursuit at the head of his Voltigeurs, and came up with his enemy at the Four Corners. He first attempted to surprise the camp, but an accidental discharge betrayed his whereabouts, and brought against him the advance guard of the enemy. These, numbering eight hundred men, Salaberry charged with fifty

\* Mrs. Secord, to whose loyal devotion it was due that Fitzgibbon was able to turn the tables on his assailants, was alive when the Prince of Wales visited Canada. His Royal Highness had an interview with the aged heroine, and subsequently sent her a graceful and welcome memento of his visit in the form of a handsome cheque.

of his Voltigeurs and a few Indians, driving them back in confusion. On the 22nd of October began the battle of Chateauguay. Salaberry's advance guard consisted of a detachment from the Beauharnois Militia, the 5th Incorporated Militia, the Voltigeurs, and the Canadian Fencibles. The victory was decisive; some twenty prisoners were taken, upwards of a hundred Americans were killed or wounded, and Hampton was in full retreat. The loss to the Canadians was two killed and sixteen wounded. The historian of the war has handed down to us the names of some of those who particularly distinguished themselves. Amongst them are Ferguson, de Bartzeh, and Levesque of the 5th; L'Eueyer, the two de Chesnays, Guy, Johnson, Powell, Hebben, Vincent, Pelletier, Vervais, Dubois, and Caron of the Voltigeurs; Daly of the Fencibles; Brayere of the Chateauguay Chasseurs; Longton and Huncau of the Beauharnois Militia. Of Longton is related an incident which recalls, not dimly, the picture of the brave old Cosmo of Bradwardine given in the graphic pages of "Waverley." Like the Baron, Longton saw nothing ridiculous in prayer before battle. "Kneeling down at the head of his company, he offered up a brief and earnest prayer. 'And now, *mes enfans*,' said he rising, 'having done our duty to God, we will do the same by our king.' Here spoke out the olden spirit of chivalrous devotion, which the history of a thousand years has made the heritage of the Canadian people."\* To show the spirit and excellence of the Canadian soldiers may be mentioned the feat achieved by the Canadian Fencibles on this occasion. On the 24th of October, MacDonnell (of Ogdensburg fame) was at Kingston with the battalion of Fencibles organized by him. Sir George Prevost sent him to join Salaberry's force. He embarked his men within a few hours, successfully passed the dangerous rapids, crossed Lake St. Francis—a storm raging at the time, disembarked on the Beauharnois shore, and in the dead of night threaded the forest which lay between him and the bank of the Chateauguay, accomplishing the whole journey of 190 miles in sixty hours, without one man of the six hundred dropping out of the ranks.

The war yet smouldered on, however. A terrible act of cruelty on the part of the American General McClure in burning the town of Niagara, fanned into a flame as fierce as that he had kindled the desire of the Canadians for revenge. Murray captured Niagara; Riall, in the fierce spirit of the day, proved that the American villages of Lewiston, Manchester, and Youngstown, flared every whit as brightly as did Niagara.

"With these acts of retribution," writes McMullen, "the justice of which was admitted by the sufferers themselves, while they denounced the conduct of their own

\* Coffin.

army in commencing such a mode of warfare, closed the campaign of 1813, which terminated to the complete disgrace of American arms. With the exception of the extreme portion of Western Canada, the enemy did not hold a single position on British soil, and the possession of Amherstburg was more than counterbalanced by the loss of Niagara. His large armies had been beaten back by mere petty detachments, and, dispirited and discouraged, were compelled to retreat into their own territory, the laughing-stock of the military men of Europe. Not only was the conduct of the British regulars much better than that of the American, but the Canadian Militia, of French, British, and American extraction, had also proved themselves infinitely superior, both for aggressive and defensive warfare, to the Militia of the enemy. This circumstance goes far to establish the fact that the climate of Canada is more favourable to the growth of a hardy and military population, than the milder and more luxurious regions farther south. The conquest of Canada was as remote as ever, and the fact began to force itself on the attention of the American people that they must emerge from the contest with little honour and no profit whatever."

The following year a small party of Militia, under Lieutenant Metcalfe, took prisoners forty Americans; under Hancock some Fencibles and Voltigeurs, with a couple of companies of H.M. 13th, covered themselves with glory in the defence of the Mill of La Colle. Five thousand Americans advanced to the siege; Hancock's whole force did not amount to five hundred men. Yet these five hundred twice charged the overwhelming force opposed to them, and held their flimsy ramparts for four hours in the face of an artillery fire, which, had it been well directed, would have pulverised the mill like a plaster model. "As evening approached, their ammunition began to run short. Still they did not quail. Not a man spoke of surrender, and the daring front they had shown during the day deterred the enemy from assaulting their position with the bayonet. At six o'clock Wilkinson retreated from the Canadian grist mill, completely foiled and beaten." Drummond followed this up by a victory at Oswego, counterbalanced by Riall's defeat at Fort Erie. Then followed the battle of Lundy's Lane, "the most fiercely contested and bloody in its results of any fought in Canada during the war!" The Americans were five thousand strong, the British about sixteen hundred, a fair proportion being Canadian Militia, who distinguished themselves by their splendid resistance to a prolonged attack by superior numbers. But it is beyond our province to detail the events of the war, save so far as they assisted to educe and consolidate the characteristics of the Canadian Militia. Battle followed battle in quick succession.

McKay, McDowell, Pilkington, Tacker, Sherbrooke, as opportunity offered, led the Royal and Canadian forces to victory against the enemy. By this time the latter had thoroughly learnt the bitter lesson that the success of their attack upon Canada was hopeless, and the final retreat of Izard, in October, was the last event of a war which completely burst the bubble of the American Invasion.

To the student of history the causes, conduct, and result of this war present considerations almost unique. To the Canadian of to-day its record is a subject of justified boast. Few stranger phenomena in the annals of national conflicts can be cited than the conduct of the recently naturalised Canadians on this occasion. As an historian has put it, "The most extraordinary feature of this war was the course pursued by the great bulk of the Americans, apart from the United States Loyalists, who had emigrated to Canada. . . . These men willingly enrolled themselves in the Militia, and gallantly aided to stem the tide of invasion." The Militia soldier of our own day can boast with pride of his forerunners, who had so greatly borne so great a part in a war which resulted in the humbling and weakening of an arrogant and aggressive foe.

So far as the history of the Militia is concerned, we may pass over the years which intervened between 1814 and 1837. In this latter year commenced what is called—according to the bias of the speaker—the Lower Canadian Rebellion or the Agitation of the Patriots. The origin of the disturbance must be sought for in the growth of the feelings of dissatisfaction, possibly inevitable before two nationalities, more or less hostile by tradition, could be welded into one people. External attack might, and, as we have seen, did, effect a temporary cohesion, but the combination, as one would say in the laboratory, was merely mechanical, and the inimical elements were still in suspense.

The man whose name is always and rightly associated with the organizing and conduct of this rebellion was Louis Papineau. According to some accounts, Papineau was a "man of men," the trusted guardian of the rights of the people, the chivalrous opponent of tyrants. At a meeting of the "Patriots," "les Fils de la Liberté," as they were styled, held at Saint-Ours in May, 1837, Wolfred Nelson moved, in impassioned language, the following amongst other resolutions: "Que pour parvenir plus efficacement à la régénération de cette province, le Bas-Canada doit, comme l'Irlande, se rallier autour d'un seul homme. Que cet homme a été marqué de Dieu, comme O'Connell, pour être le chef politique, le générateur d'une nation; qu'il a été doué pour cela d'une force d'esprit et d'une éloquence incomparables, d'une haine de l'oppression et

d'un amour pour sa patrie que rien, ni promesses, ni menaces, ne pourrait jamais ébranler." Papineau addressed vast meetings to which women and children came overnight; people swore by him, hung on his words as veritable oracles, and dedicated to him a statue of Liberty.

Other opinions give us a very different view of this popular idol. "As the Canadian rebellion," wrote McMullen, "differed in all respects from the American War of Independence, so was the impassioned, prejudiced, and imprudent Louis J. Papineau the antipodes of the sober, impartial, and prudent George Washington. One loved himself, the other loved his country. The Canadian advocate, whose battles had ever been those of words, regardless of his countrymen, desired to raise himself to supreme power in the state; the American soldier, who had faced many a danger by flood and field, sought only the happiness of his fellow citizens. It is evident," continues the historian, "that he recked nothing of the misery, the bloodshed, the privation which must attend a rebellion. He fought for his own hand. He had neither a good cause, a good counsel, nor money to reward his friends. He was a brilliant orator, but no statesman; a clever partisan orator, but a miserable general officer; a braggart in the forum and a coward in the field." Perhaps the best idea of the final attitude of the "patriots" which precipitated the rebellion may be gathered from an extract of a speech made by Papineau in the House of Assembly. Ignoring prudence and loyalty alike, he openly advocated republicanism. "The time has gone by," said he, "when Europe could give monarchies to America; on the contrary, an epoch is now approaching when America will give republics to Europe."

But he reckoned without the innate loyalty which has been before referred to as a distinctive feature of the Canadian nation. Others than the "patriots" could and did organize; the Militia began to bestir themselves; for one shriek of frenzied treason there arose a chorus of loyal addresses eloquent of a stern determination to oppose force by force.

The actual position was not satisfactory.

The unsettled peace of the past few years had not been conducive to military organization. "The military force in both provinces was very weak, and invited rebellion. In Upper Canada, thirteen hundred regular troops, including artillerymen, were scattered here and there from Kingston to Penetanguishene, in Lower Canada; about two thousand soldiers garrisoned Quebec, or, at other points, awed nearly half a million of partially or wholly disaffected habitants. Nor was the Government better off in other respects, as

regarded defensive or offensive military operations. Twenty-two years of profound peace had made sad havoc with gun carriages, limber wheels, and all manner of warlike munitions. The powder in the musty magazines was damp; muskets, swords, and bayonets had long rusted in inglorious ease; and bedding and blankets had disappeared before successive generations of moths."

Montreal became the first headquarters of the Government troops, and three volunteer companies—cavalry, artillery, and infantry—were rapidly formed; Gore marched against St. Denis; Weatherall was dispatched against St. Charles. Papineau at this crisis acted as demagogues before and since his day generally have acted. He kept well out of the way of danger, leaving some of his braver colleagues to bear the brunt. Wolfred Nelson, "the noblest Roman of them all," proved himself no despicable commander. The rebels gained a decided success at St. Charles, though their numerical loss was greater. Two captives, Lieutenant Weir and Chartrand, a militiaman, were murdered. The success was a very fleeting one. Weatherall annihilated the insurgents at St. Charles, and his militia and volunteers "bitterly avenged their murdered comrades." The rebel leader, Brown, fled, leaving his dupes to take care of themselves; the volunteers routed a body of the enemy at St. Armands, and General Colborne repeated the lesson of St. Charles at St. Eustache, where Girod, a nominee of the invisible Papineau, was at the head of a considerable force. Girod ran away, and four days afterwards committed suicide to avoid capture. The frontier Militia scattered another body of insurgents commanded by Robert Nelson; the Glengarry Militia, under Colonel McDonald and Fraser, captured Beanharnois; the Odelltown and Hemmingford Militia defeated another body of rebels at La Colle Mill. The final stroke of the war, if war it can be called, was dealt by three hundred of the Odelltown Militia under Colonel Taylor, who utterly routed about a thousand of the enemy, and so ended the lower Canada Rebellion of 1837-8.

"Internal rebellion and piratical invasion had been alike repressed by the gallant Militia of the Canadas and the firm attitude assumed by its civil government and military authorities. Open violence and the warlike strength of eight millions of people in the United States had failed to sever this country from Great Britain in the Three Years' War beginning with 1812: secret treason and partial internal disaffection had proved equally impotent in that direction."

After the termination of the Papineau rebellion, the next important occurrence which called out the military strength of Canada—fortunately not involving them in actual

warfare—was the American Civil War. As was inevitable in the case of countries so closely adjacent, the relations between the two became strained. For a time, indeed, Canada was a species of common “refreshing” ground for both belligerents. Between fifty and sixty thousand Canadians served in the ranks of either North or South; to the latter, the Dominion afforded a convenient refuge for non-combatants; the North availed itself largely of Canadian help in obtaining supplies. Then came the familiar episodes of the escaped slave Anderson and the seizure of the Trent. The political atmosphere became still more charged with the electricity which at any time might flash and thunder into the horrors of war. The Northerners felt aggrieved at the criticism passed by Lord Palmerston on their conduct at the battle of Bull Run; the discomfiture of the ill-organized levies of the North was, they thought, referred to with unnecessary contempt as the “unfortunate rapid movement” of the Federal soldiers. A peremptory letter was dispatched by Lord Palmerston, Government troops were sent to Canada, and thirty Volunteer Companies were called out to guard the frontier.

But no hostilities took place, and the soldiers of Canada had to wait another three or four years before the theatrical Fenian inroad again called them to the front. It is, unfortunately, a matter of history that this movement owed whatever of gravity it possessed to the more than passive sympathy of the United States. If the Fenian attack were but successful, they seem to have thought, the coveted territory of Canada might yet come under the dominion of the Stars and Stripes.

To insure its being successful help was required, and help—scarcely concealed and always eager—was forthcoming. It was given out that on St. Patrick's Day the victims of tyranny, the sons of Erin, the implacable foes of the British Lion—and all the rest of it—would make a descent on Canada. The reply was equally prompt. “In less than twenty-four hours fourteen thousand men sprang to arms to defend their country.” It proved, after all, a flash in the pan, this quasi manifesto of the rebel leader Sweeny, but a few months later a more serious movement was made, intended to synchronize with the assassinations and dynamite murders planned for Great Britain. The American Government almost openly sympathized with the arrangements; forthwith blackguards, the scum of the armies of the Civil War, appeared amongst the Fenians as generals, colonels, and majors—seldom anything lower than a major—and with them were some real soldiers with a deep-rooted dislike to Great Britain, and a still more deeply rooted craving for money and notoriety. A movement was soon

made. General O'Neill entered on Canadian territory and established himself at Limeridge.

The Queen's Own (Toronto), a company of Hamilton Volunteers, and the York and Caledonian Volunteers were soon at Port Colborne under Colonel Peacock. An encounter followed; the Queen's Own behaved with marked valour; but an unfounded scare of cavalry compelled a hurried retreat, though it is believed that the rebel loss was considerably in excess of that of the Canadians, which was under thirty in killed and wounded. Meanwhile some more volunteers under Colonel Dennis had been fighting gallantly, taking prisoners sixty rebels (only ten less than Dennis's whole force), and subsequently making a desperate resistance, resulting in their practical extermination, when attacked by the main body of the enemy under O'Neill. Reinforcements arrived for the Fenians, which the American Government was "powerless" to prevent, but their leader had lost all hope. *Savez qui peut* was the order of the day, and such Fenians as were found on Canadian soil were ignominiously put into prison. More inroads were made during the following few weeks. The usual amount of "tall talk" habitual with Irish malcontents and other demagogues, was indulged in, and—the Fenian invasion of Canada was at an end. But injury was caused and outlay. At one time no fewer than forty thousand Volunteers were under arms, and during the summer companies defended every conceivable point of invasion. "Canada bewailed the death of her college youths and young men of Toronto. But their blood was not shed in vain. It speedily bore fruit; and in connection with the gallant manner in which a great volunteer force had sprung to arms, raised the country in the estimation of the world."

These various disturbances had had a most strengthening effect upon the Militia organization. The volunteer energy which the invasions and perils had called forth had convinced the authorities and the country alike that there was no want of fighting material, and that of the best, in the mixed nationalities of the Dominion. It is true that for a time the Militia organization was principally a paper one. This was remedied early in the present reign, when a re-organization of the Militia substituted permanent corps, and a certain number of years' service, for those hitherto established for a few months' service, or a particular emergency. The Militia Army List for Upper Canada alone showed one hundred and six complete regiments, with the full complement of officers and staff, the names of the two latter grades filling eighty-three closely printed octavo pages. There were four battalions of incorporated Militia, organized and clothed like the troops of the line; twelve battalions of provincial Militia, on duty for a stated period; thirty-one corps of



Artillery, Cavalry, coloured companies, and riflemen; while most of the Militia corps had a troop of Cavalry attached to them. Thus with a population of four hundred and fifty thousand souls, Upper Canada could easily assemble forty thousand men in arms without seriously distressing the country."

The Red River Campaign was the next opportunity that offered for the Canadian Militia to give evidence of their worth. A fresh arrangement of the regiments was about this time made; as will be seen, the official date of many of those in existence is given as about this time. It will be desirable therefore to describe somewhat in full the causes and incidents of the campaign, though if its importance is to be judged by the quantity of blood shed, it must perforce disappear altogether. The Red River Campaign was a bloodless one, but had the generalship been less brilliant or the quality of the forces less sterling than it was, the record might and certainly would have been very different.

The following passage from Captain Huyshe's narrative of the expedition will convey in a few words the steps taken for the organization of the little army to be commanded by Colonel Wolseley.

"The expeditionary force, as finally constituted, numbered about 1,200 fighting men, of whom two-thirds were militia, and the remainder regular troops. The latter consisted of the first battalion 60th Royal Rifles, 350 strong; detachments of Royal Artillery and Royal Engineers, twenty men each, with a battery of four 7-pounder brass mountain guns, and a proportion of the Army Service and Army Hospital Corps. The former consisted of two battalions of Rifles, one from each province, raised for two years by voluntary enlistment from the drilled Militia. These two battalions were named respectively the 1st or Ontario Rifles and the 2nd or Quebec Rifles. The regiments of infantry were divided into seven companies of fifty strong (including three officers), with the object of making them more handy and available for boat service by putting each company into a brigade of five boats. The selections for this service were most strict, and none but men of the strongest and hardest constitutions were permitted to go, it being rightly decided that on an expedition of this nature, about to plunge into an unknown and uninhabited wilderness, every sick man would be a more than ordinary encumbrance.

"The enlistment of volunteers for the Ontario battalion proceeded briskly. The medical examination of the men was very strict, and numbers were rejected as physically unable to stand the fatigues they were expected to undergo. Great was the disappointment of the rejected, and many a threatening and angry look was cast

on the medical officers. But so great was the anxiety of the young men of all classes in Ontario to go to the Red River that many who could not get commissions as officers preferred shouldering a rifle in the ranks to being left behind."

The Quebec Battalion was not so fortunate in its enrolment, owing to the existence of some vague idea that the war was directed against the French Canadians, as such, and to the mistaken notion that Frenchmen would be taking arms against "their brethren." The enlistment proceeded slowly, and, "inasmuch as two-thirds of the officers appointed to the Quebec Battalion were French Canadians, the English-speaking Canadians objected to serve under French officers." Not, indeed until enlistment was allowed from Ontario did the battalion complete its numbers.

The recruits for the two battalions were sent to Toronto as fast as they were enlisted and were there formed into companies, and served out with arms and clothing, under the superintendence of Colonel Feilden of the 60th Rifles, to whom their organization had been specially confided.

The Americans were not slow to seize the opportunity of showing their sympathy with the troublers of Great Britain's peace. They closed the canal, stopped even a ship unconnected with the operations, and thereby entailed a vast amount of extra labour on the expeditionary force. In consequence of these difficulties, "Colonel Wolseley despatched two companies of the 1st Ontario Rifles on the 14th May, to form a garrison at the Sault under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Bolton, Royal Artillery, the Deputy-Assistant Adjutant-General to the force, for the passage of the troops and the transport of the stores across the portage. The departure of these companies, the first detachment of the Red River force which left Toronto, was hailed with delight by the people of Ontario, who had set their hearts on the success of the expedition, and were determined to carry it through. Colonel Bolton arrived safely at the Sault, and immediately set to work to complete the road across the portage and get the stores re-shipped on Lake Superior.

"Just at this time the hydra-headed Fenian organization began again to raise its head, and threaten the peace and security of Canada. Two more companies of the 1st Ontario Rifles were, therefore, sent off on the 16th to increase the garrison at the Sault, and Colonel Bolton was directed to be on the alert to guard against a raid from the American side, as the Fenians had openly declared their intention to annoy and interfere with the expedition."

But if the carrying out of the expedition proper was unattended by bloodshed, the scenes which necessitated it had a tragic hue. Anything more horrible than the

murder of Thomas Scott it is impossible to conceive. Riel had captured Fort Garry, and held in durance there some fifty or sixty British subjects. The inhabitants of Prairie Portage determined—putting aside with pardonable impetuosity the negotiations which were unwisely transferring Riel from the position of a vulgar rebel to that of a belligerent power—to rescue these prisoners, whose sufferings had been described by Scott, who had himself escaped. A rough-and-ready Volunteer force was organized and equipped, and Major Boulton, of the Royal Canadians, attached to Colonel Dennis's surveying party, took the command. Major Boulton himself explains that his object in joining the Volunteers was to keep them strictly within the limits of their declared intention—the rescue of the prisoners. The expedition was a failure, and on its return forty-seven of its members were treacherously taken prisoners by Riel. Major Boulton was condemned to death,\* but after great exertions the chief of the rebels was induced to pardon him.

It does not happen to many men to live to describe their sensations when under sentence of death from an unscrupulous and desperate demagogue, but this, fortunately, is the case with Major Boulton, who, in his account of the subsequent North-west Rebellion, gives in simple, telling words the story of those terrible days of suspense. One coincidence is sufficiently remarkable for us to notice here. After the sentence had gone forth, a sentry was appointed to sleep in Boulton's room. "That night," says the Major, "I slept on the bare floor without a pillow, covered with my buffalo rug, and with the sentry as my only companion. During the night I was continually disturbed by the sentry, who would come and wake me, go down on his knees, and pray and groan.\* I sent him away repeatedly, but only to return again. He was in great trouble and concern about me, and the next morning when they unlocked my door he was in a state of lunacy. The excitement of being locked up with me had proved too much for him, and his mind was unstrung. Another sentry was placed in the room, a tall man, about six feet two inches in height, who lay down all day in the corner. About three o'clock I was aroused by a peculiar gurgling noise, which caused me to go over and look at my sentry. I found that he was dead. It was found that the man had died of apoplexy. He was then carried out, but without placing another sentry over me. In fact I think the guards had become superstitious." As before observed Boulton was eventually reprieved, after a good deal of theatrical attitudinizing on the part of Riel. Not so with Scott. Riel sent delegates to "solicit

\* Major Boulton records his opinion that his guards were averse from the murderous proclivities of Riel.

the suffrages of the prisoners for his election." Scott strenuously, though perhaps rashly, advised his comrades to have "nothing to do with these men." A sham court-martial was formed, and Scott was condemned to death the same day. The details are so terrible that we will give the *ipsissima verba* of John Bruce, a former colleague of Riel.

"Six soldiers had been chosen to shoot Scott. I have here again to write the name of a man whose behaviour in that circumstance reflects on him the greatest honour. Augustin Parisien, one of the six soldiers, declared openly that he would not shoot at Scott; in fact, he took off the cap from his gun before the word of command 'present' was given. Of the five balls remaining, only two hit the poor victim, one on the left shoulder, and the other in the upper part of the chest above the heart. Had the other soldiers missed the mark undesignedly, or had they intentionally aimed away from Riel's victim, is not known. However that may be, as the two wounds were not sufficient to cause death, at least sudden death, a man named Guillemette stepped forward and discharged the contents of a pistol close to Scott's head while he was lying on the ground. This ball, however, took a wrong direction. It penetrated the upper part of the cheek and came out somewhere about the cartilage of the nose. Scott was still not dead, but that did not prevent his butchers from placing him, *alive and still speaking*, in a kind of coffin made of four rough boards. It was nailed and plated in the south-eastern bastion, and an armed soldier was placed at the door. This would seem like a story made at one's ease, if there were not several credible witnesses who, between the hours of five and six in the evening, heard the unfortunate Scott speaking from under the lid of his coffin, and it was known that he had been shot at half-past twelve. What a long and horrible agony, and what ferocious cruelty was this on the part of his butchers! The words heard and understood by the French Metis were only these: 'My God! My God!' Some English Metis, and those understanding English, heard distinctly these words: 'For God's sake take me out of here or kill me.' Towards 11 o'clock—that is after ten and a half hours of frightful agony—a person, whose name I shall withhold for the present, went into the bastion, and, according to some, gave him the finishing stroke with a butcher's knife, with a pistol according to others. After having inflicted the last blow on poor Scott, that person said, as he was coming back from the bastion, 'He is dead this time!' The corpse was left for a few days in the south-eastern bastion, being guarded by the soldiers, relieving each other in turn."

Scott may fairly be taken as a representative of the class from which many of the

Militia were drawn. "It should be borne in mind that he was not taken prisoner with arms in his hands. On the first occasion, before the prisoners were captured in Dr. Schultz's house, he had gone boldly down to the Fort to ask Riel to give safe conduct to the ladies and children who were in danger there, and Riel's only answer to his peaceful mission was to thrust him into prison. Nor on the second occasion was he armed; so this murder has no extenuation, and for cold-bloodedness and deliberate butchery poor Scott's fate has scarcely a parallel."

It was obvious that measures must be taken to vindicate the outraged authority of the Queen. Some twelve hundred men were ordered to be constituted into an expeditionary force, the details of which have been above noted. From first to last the Militia performed the duties assigned to them in a manner which satisfied to the uttermost their gallant but somewhat punctilious commander, and the general order promulgated by the Duke of Cambridge on the conclusion of the operations may be confidently referred to by the Dominion Army as an undeniable testimony to their efficiency.

"G. O.

"His Royal Highness, while thanking the Regular troops for their exertions, wishes especially to place on record his full appreciation of the services rendered by the Militia of the Dominion of Canada, who were associated with them throughout these trying duties.

"(Signed) R. AIREY,

*Adjutant-General.*

"Horse Guards, *November, 1870.*"

Beyond another demonstration by the redoubtable O'Neill in the autumn of 1870, to meet the possible danger of which local levies again came to the front, no further operation of importance occurred till the still recent North-west Rebellion of 1885. Into the details of this rebellion we propose to enter somewhat at length, as it is beyond question that its suppression—effected as it was by Dominion troops only—is at once a triumph and a landmark in the annals of the Canadian Militia. Once again it was Riel who caused the disturbance.

He had been, to a certain extent, tolerated since the collapse of his late attempt; indeed, when the Fenians threatened the frontier in the autumn of 1870, Riel and some of his colleagues organized companies for service against them, and these companies were actually inspected by Governor Archibald. But the murder of Scott and others

was still unexpiated, and in October, 1874, Riel was outlawed, while Letine, who had been president of the sham court-martial, was sentenced to death. Both sentences were subsequently modified to banishment for five years.

In 1885 it was determined by the Government to survey and allot the vast and sparsely occupied tracts of the north-west. Difficulties arose, unfounded claims were made, and their rejection denounced as Governmental tyranny. Riel, who had during the intervening years managed to acquire the character of a rebel leader in reserve, came to the fore, commenced to agitate, and formed a provisional government, of which he was, of course, the head. It immediately became necessary to levy contributions to sustain the dignity of this said government. "From levying they got to seizing, and from seizing stores they got to seizing prisoners. Of the possession of prisoners, Riel, in days gone by, well knew the value." To Riel the acquisition of power seems to have acted as did those terrible potions of old time, which destroyed a man's sense and goaded him on to suicidal madness. When interviewed by a delegate from the Government he declared that it was blood that he wanted. "It is blood, blood; we want blood; it is a war of extermination." He then commenced to threaten the delegate, M'Kay, abusing him in unmeasured terms, and finally declaring that his should be the first blood. After a good deal more strutting and fuming, he subsided with a ludicrous rapidity. The only parallel that we can recall is the well-known dramatic incident which occurred at Mr. Bob Sawyer's historical supper party. Mr. Noddy and Mr. Gunter were going to do all sorts of dreadful things. Mr. Noddy said Mr. Gunter was no gentleman; Mr. Gunter threatened to throw Mr. Noddy out of the window. Eventually Mr. Noddy admitted that he had ever entertained a devoted personal attachment to Mr. Gunter, and the latter declared that upon the whole he rather preferred Mr. Noddy to his own brother. Riel duplicated the parts of Noddy and Gunter. After threatening M'Kay to kill him in five minutes, declaring he was a scoundrel, a robber, and a thief, and calling a committee to try him for his life, he quieted down to requesting M'Kay not to make so much noise, and finally apologised, adding that he entertained great respect for him and was very sorry not to have him on his side!

The first actual hostilities occurred at Duck Lake towards the end of March, 1885. The Government troops, consisting of about a hundred men under Major Crozier, were surrounded by a very superior number of rebels, and only by the coolness of Major Crozier and his force was a complete massacre avoided. As it was, twelve men were

killed, nine of them being Prince Albert Volunteers, and Captain Moore and twenty-five others wounded. This engagement, writes Major Boulton, was the signal to the Government to take decisive steps to prevent the recurrence of such a rising, and to show the power of Canada to maintain her laws. Riel now determined upon more active measures and organization. The Indians were to be pressed to war with him against the Government, and forthwith he—

"Bade his messengers ride forth  
East and west, and south and north,  
To summon his array."

The crisis was a grave one. The population to whom Riel's appeals were addressed were only too likely to be beguiled by the delusive pictures he drew; the Fenians were known to be on the alert to seize any opportunity that disturbance in the Dominion might offer; and there were not now, as on former outbreaks of the sort, imperial troops to serve as a nucleus for such military operations as might be necessary. "Without the guiding experience of past expeditions, without any knowledge of how to deal with an armed rebellion, thousands of miles from the central authority, and without the steady military training in the field of any of her officers or men, Canada had to undertake the task of arming, equipping, transporting, and commanding the military expedition which was now deemed necessary." The commander-in-chief was General Middleton, whose laurels had been won in India and New Zealand, and he recognised the necessity of so dealing with the rebellion that the snake should not be merely scotched but killed. The unfortunate affair at Duck Lake showed the danger of attempting to achieve anything without a strong force, and this General Middleton set himself to organize. He found, however, "that the only available forces there were the 90th Battalion, which had just been organized under the late Colonel Kennedy; a troop of cavalry under Captain Knight, and a field battery of artillery under Major Jarvis. The 90th had been called out on the 23rd, and promptly answering to a full roll-call at their headquarters, had armed and equipped themselves for service, and were soon ready for the field. The left wing of the 90th was sent forward on the 25th under Major Boswell, to Troy, a station on the main line of the Canadian Pacific Railway, which was to be used as the base of operations for the column under the immediate command of the General himself. In the emergency many retired military officers in Winnipeg came forward and offered their services.

"The other troops called out and promptly answering the call, were the Governor-

General's Body Guard under Colonel Denison; the 10th Royal Grenadiers, under Colonel Grasett; the Queen's Own Rifles under Colonel Millar, and 'C' School of Infantry under Major Smith, all of Toronto. These regiments were brigaded under Colonel Otter, Commandant of the Infantry School. The late Colonel Williams was authorized to raise a provisional battalion, which came to be familiarly known as 'The Midlanders,' being composed of two companies from the 46th Battalion, and one each from the 15th, 40th, 45th, 47th, 49th, and 57th Battalions, all situated in the Midland district.

"Colonel O'Brien was authorized to raise a battalion called the 'Simcoe Rangers,' composed of four companies of the 35th Simcoe, and four companies of the 12th York Rangers. The 65th Mount Royal Rifles of Montreal, under Colonel Onimet, were also called out for active service. Colonel Scott of Winnipeg was commissioned to raise a regiment, known as the 91st Battalion, which was drawn from Winnipeg and the surrounding towns. Lieutenant-Colonel Osborne Smith, C.M.G., was also commissioned to raise a battalion in Winnipeg called the '92nd or Winnipeg Light Infantry.'

"In addition to these forces, a detachment of fifty sharpshooters was selected from the Governor-General's Foot Guards under Captain Todd of Ottawa. On the 31st of March the 7th Fusiliers of London, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Williams, and the 9th Battalion, Quebec, under Colonel Amyot, were also called out. A provisional battalion was formed from detachments of the 66th, the Halifax Garrison Artillery, and the 63rd, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Bremner. The Quebec School of Cavalry, under Colonel Turnbull, and 'A' and 'B' Batteries of Quebec and Kingston, were also called out and ordered to the front. Later on the Montreal Garrison Artillery, under Colonel Oswald, were ordered to proceed to garrison Regina.

"Captain Dennis was commissioned to raise an Intelligence Mounted Corps, composed of surveyors; and local companies were gazetted at Birtle under the command of Captain Wood, at Regina under Captain Scott, at Battleford under Captain Nash, at Emerson under Captain Whitman, at Yorktown under Major Watson, at Qu'Appelle under Captain Jackson, besides a local company at Calgary. The Rocky Mountain Rangers under Captain Stewart, and the Moose Mountain Scouts under Captain White, were also put in commission."

Such is the succinct account of the composition of the Canadian force given by Major Boulton, who had—as we have above seen—ample reason to anticipate with pleasure the final suppression of Riel. Major Boulton himself raised a body of Cavalry, "Boulton's Scouts," and with him were associated Captain Gardiner, Captain



Johnstone, Lieutenant Pigott, and Lieutenant Gough. Another mounted force was raised by Captain French. General Middleton divided his force into three columns, under the leadership of himself, General Strange, and Colonel Otter respectively. Some idea of the severe nature of the task to which the army was devoted may be gathered from the fact that the troops from Quebec had to travel by rail two thousand five hundred miles, and those from Nova Scotia and New Brunswick three thousand miles, to arrive at the positions assigned to them.

A gratifying proof that "*Cœlum non animum mutant*" holds true with regard to the loyalty of the Canadians was supplied by a letter which reached the authorities a few days after hostilities commenced. It was dated from Chicago and was forwarded by Mr. Grant, formerly a Lieutenant in the Governor-General's Foot Guards.

"We, the undersigned, subjects of her most gracious Majesty Queen Victoria, at present resident in the United States of America, learning with regret of the outbreak of a rebellion in the North-West Territories of her Majesty's dominions, beg most respectfully to notify her Colonial Representative of our willingness to aid in the suppression of the same, and will cheerfully answer to the call of duty, should our services be required.

"In thus tendering our services, we wish to show our deep sense of loyalty and devoted attachment to her Majesty.

"God save the Queen."

In commenting upon this letter, the Report of the Deputy Minister states that to many of the signatures appended were added the titular ranks the bearers had formerly borne in the active Militia, and that inasmuch as many similar declarations and offers were received, it might with justice be claimed "that those who have passed through a period of service in the ranks of our Militia never forgot their military life and training; and secondly, that even as residents of the great and prosperous Republic, they are far from forgetting the flag to which they owe allegiance."

It must not be forgotten, again, in estimating rightly the value of the services performed by the army of Canada in this campaign, that the season was terribly inclement. Roads were knee-deep and often waist-deep; the winds were bitterly cold, and charged with half-frozen sleet; and morasses of slush and water bordered, and even covered, the routes. The narrator we have before quoted records that on one occasion he was unfortunate enough to fall into the water up to the waist. On getting out, his clothes were

frozen literally as hard as boards, so hard and stiff, at any rate, that he had to be lifted on to his horse. The thermometer at that time was  $15^{\circ}$  below freezing. Another difficulty which must have assumed prodigious proportions to a young and untried force was that of the transport of supplies. As the official report puts it:—"Canada, suddenly sprung into a war 2,000 miles away from the chief centres of population, found herself without even the barest skeleton of either an hospital branch or a commissariat branch, or a transport service. Food for 5,000 troops had to be provided. The attendant army of teamsters, foragers, surgeons, and others who wait upon the troops had also to be supplied. There was no Government depôt of food supply. There was not even a pound of hard tack or a ship's biscuit in store. The season was the worst possible time of the year, for winter had not disappeared nor spring set in. The snow was too soft to bear heavy teams. The grass was not long enough for the use of horses and cattle. There was no shelter along the wide stretches of prairie.

"What the work is may be seen from the fact that on May 28th last, there left Calgary for Edmonton a convoy, three miles long, consisting of 178 ox and Indian pony-carts; 45 four and two-horse teams; and 80 double bull waggons, each hauled by ten huge oxen, conveying two or three hundred tons of supplies."

Yet few campaigns can show a better record of due and sufficient supply.

As before observed, General Middleton divided his force into three columns, the composition of which was as under.

The first column, commanded by General Middleton:—

'A' Battery (Quebec);  
 90th Battalion (Winnipeg);  
 Infantry School Corps;  
 Boulton's Scouts;  
 10th Battalion Royal Grenadiers;  
 Frende's Scouts;  
 Winnipeg Field Battery;  
 Dennis' Scouts (Surrey);  
 Midland Battalion.

The second column, under Colonel Otter:—

'B' Battery (Kingston);  
 Queen's Own Rifles;  
 Infantry School;

Todd's Sharpshooters ;  
 Winnipeg Field Battery ;  
 35th Battalion.

The third column, under General Strange :—

65th Battalion ;  
 Winnipeg Divisional Battalion (32nd) ;  
 Strange's Rangers ;  
 Mounted Police.

Other of the troops were stationed at various places ; amongst the regiments thus accounted for being the Governor-General's Body Guard, the 7th, 9th, 66th, and 91st Battalions, the Winnipeg Troop Cavalry, and the Quebec Cavalry School.

The chief engagements of the campaign were those of FISH CREEK, CUT KNIFE HILL, BAROUE, and the operations connected with the proceedings against Poundmaker and Big Bear. It will add to a full appreciation of the part played by the Militia, if we quote whenever practicable the unvarnished reports of the officers to whom the accomplishment of these undertakings was entrusted.

The march to Fish Creek was an arduous one, and may claim a high position in the annals of military endurance. From Qu'Appelle to Clark's Crossing, where General Middleton encamped before the action, is nearly two hundred and twenty miles, and this distance he covered in ten days. Arrived at the Crossing, he had to await reinforcements and to reconnoitre the position, and on the 24th of April—less than a month after the General left Winnipeg—the attack was made.

Skirmishers were thrown out in front, and on them fell the first brunt of the encounter. The enemy were securely ensconced in a ravine—so securely that one Indian brave stood out in full view of our men and performed a war-dance, with the object, it may be assumed, of encouraging his comrades and intimidating the attacking party. Naturally in the latter portion of his object he did not succeed, but it was emphatically a *mauvais quart d'heure* that the gallant advance guard spent. Major Boulton, who was well to the fore, has given us a graphic description of the situation.

"The leading section," he says, "had not been gone many minutes, when I heard bang! bang! and immediately after, a volley was fired at us, which, however, struck the trees in front. I gave the command, 'Left wheel, gallop!' and we charged down upon thirty or forty mounted men who were standing in the shelter of a bluff. When we came upon them, they at once tamed their horses and bolted for a ravine or gully about

a hundred and fifty yards distant, dismounting as they galloped. I instantly gave the word to my men, 'Halt! Dismount! Extend in skirmishing order, and lie down!' Simultaneously the enemy, who were in the ravine and out of sight, opened a murderous fire upon us. I said, 'Fire away, boys, and lie close; never mind if you don't see anything, fire!' my object being to keep the enemy down in the gully and hold them in check till the supports came up. The rebels would pop up from the ravine, take a snap shot, and disappear in an instant. The General at once sent back Captain Wise, A.D.C., to hurry up the main body, in which duty his horse was shot. We here sustained the whole of the enemy's fire, which was very hot and unfortunately fatal. Captain Gardiner, who was beside me, was the first to say, 'Major! I am hit.' Almost immediately Langford called out that he was hit. Bruce was the next victim. Then poor D'Arcy Baker called out, 'Oh, Major! I'm hit!' as he received his death wound by a bullet crashing into his breast. Then Gardiner called out, 'I am hit again!' Langford, too, was wounded a second time. I told the wounded to drag themselves to the rear the best way they could and get out of further danger; ordering the remainder to hold on and fire away." The main body soon came up, and the fight began in earnest at the mouth of the ravine, whose dense undergrowth and adjacent willow copses afforded excellent cover for the rebels. The 90th and the 'C' School of Infantry were soon in the thick of it, and despite the perplexing nature of the conflict, the enemy being unseen, showed a steady front, and poured in a continuous fire on the most salient positions. Here, too, the artillery performed yeomen's service, seizing a small plateau, and from it raking the enemy's position. Gradually the ravine was forced and the flanks clear, but in the process many, both officers and men, were killed or badly wounded. The left column, with whom were the Grenadiers and some Winnipeg Artillery, succeeded in crossing the river, and the hotly contested action was brought to an end, the rebels being decisively defeated. Our loss was about eight killed and forty-four wounded." The official account supplies some further details.

"Mounted Infantry scouts spread out well in front," reported General Middleton, "with support of Mounted Infantry, under Major Boulton, about 200 yards in rear. An advanced guard of the 90th Battalion about 300 yards in rear of that, and the main column about 200 or 300 yards in rear of the advanced guard.

"On approaching some bluffs, just as the left advanced scouts were circling round, we suddenly received a heavy fire from a bluff and some ground sloping back on our left, which fire was luckily too high to do mischief, having been evidently fired in a

hurry, owing to the approach of the left scouts. Major Boulton instantly ordered his men to dismount, let loose their horses (two of which were immediately shot) and hold the enemy in check. This was done by them most gallantly, the flankers and files in front falling back on the main body.

“The advanced guard on arrival extended and took cover in the bluff nearest us, and, as the main body came up, two more companies of the 90th were extended, the rebels advancing up out of the ravine, into which, however, they again speedily retired, and a heavy fire was exchanged; but having sent a party round to the house on the enemy's right, the enemy gradually retired along the ravine, while our men advanced slowly to the crest of a deeply wooded part running out of the main ravine. In this former ravine a small party of the rebels made a stand, in what we found afterwards to be some carefully constructed rifle-pits. . . . Captain Peters, with great pluck and dash, led the dismounted men of ‘A’ Battery, supported by a party of the 90th under Captain Ruttan, and gallantly attempted to dislodge them, but they were so well covered and were able to bring such a heavy fire on the party advancing without being seen, killing three men—two artillerymen, and one of the 90th (the body of one artilleryman was afterwards found within eight or ten yards of their pits)—that I resolved to leave them, contenting myself with extending more of the 90th in front to watch them, and sending some shells into the bluff now and then. During the action a messenger from the left column arrived asking if they should bring troops across, and I directed the 10th Grenadiers to be brought over, which was done by means of the scow most expeditiously, one company with Lord Melgund arriving about 1 o'clock p.m., and two other companies under Lieutenant-Colonel Grassett later on, with two guns of the Winnipeg Field Battery, under Major Jarvis. As the affair was nearly over then, I contented myself with extending a company of the 10th on the right centre to assist in watching the ravine where the enemy's rifle-pits were, the other companies being on the extreme right in support, and ultimately remaining there until the wounded were removed to the camp-ground, which had been selected in the meantime. I would here beg leave to draw particular attention to the crossing of these troops who, though luckily not required, might well have been. To fully appreciate the rapidity with which this was done, in spite of the difficulties that existed, the river must be seen: wooded heights on each side 100 feet high—at bottom, large boulders encrusted in thick sticky mud—a fringe of huge blocks of ice on each side, a wretched scow carrying about sixty men at most, pulled with oars made with an axe, and a rapid current of about three or four miles an hour, were the obstacles that

were surmounted by dint of determination and anxiety to join with and aid their comrades."

It seemed probable shortly afterwards that further fighting was imminent.

Two nights after the battle of Fish Creek, the force was alarmed by the report of a rifle and a summons, "Guard, turn out!" "The whole camp was astir at once, and, in the most orderly and self-possessed manner, fell in on their parade-ground within three minutes from the first alarm. The General, who was on horseback in a moment, rode off to visit the pickets and ascertain the cause of alarm. Three mounted men were reported as having been seen approaching the near picket, and not answering to the challenge the sentry fired, but nothing more was heard of them. After half an hour's anxious wondering the troops turned in."

On the 1st May Colonel Otter marched to chastise the turbulent Poundmaker, and found plenty of hard work cut out for him. The encounter between the police and rebels at Duck Lake had seemingly given the required impetus to the Indians under Poundmaker and Big Bear to commence hostilities. They had been busy before the arrival of Colonel Otter at Battleford. A Belgian named Bernard Tremont was shot while at work in his stock yard; the Farm Instructor on the Stony Reserve, a man named James Payne, was murdered by the Indians, who had obtained entrance on the pretext of demanding rations; a trader of Battleford named Smart was shot dead four miles from his home by an ambuscade of Indians. Previous to Otter's arrival the defence of Battleford was practically committed to the Mounted Police, with whom were the Battleford Rifles, a garrison far too small to successfully resist the inroad which appeared imminent. Colonel Otter therefore determined to march to Battleford, which he reached three days after poor Smart had been killed. The country which he had to traverse is described as "a vast unoccupied prairie, covered with luxuriant vegetation and furrowed paths known as buffalo runs." His arrival was signalled by an outbreak of incendiarism on the part of the Indians far and near; the flames from stack and homestead made livid the sky. It was necessary to take action at once. Poundmaker with a considerable force occupied a strong position at Cut Knife Hill, and against this position marched, on the 1st of May, a detachment of Otter's force, about 500 strong. "The attacking column was composed of the Mounted Police and Scouts, under Colonel Herchmer, with Captain Neil in advance, and the line of march was by the south side of the Battle River, going west in the direction of Poundmaker's reserve. Following the police were the artillery, with two seven-pounders and the Gatling under

Major Short, with Captains Rutherford and Farley, and Lieutenants Pelletier and Prower. After them came 'C' School of Infantry, under Lieutenant Wadmore and Lieutenant Cassels, G.O.R.; the half company of Ottawa Sharpshooters, under Lieutenant Gray; No. 1 Company of the Queen's Own Rifles, under Captains Brown and Hughes, and Lieutenant Brock; the Battleford Rifles, under Captain Nash and Lieutenants Marigold and Baker, brought up the rear with the ammunition and forage transport. The staff consisted of Lieutenant Sears, Brigade Major; Captain Mutton, O.O.R., Brigade Quartermaster; Brigade Surgeon, F. W. Strange."

The position of the enemy was somewhat similar to that they had taken at Fish Creek, but they appear to have been unmindful of the proper precautions to protect against a surprise, a fact which enabled Colonel Otter to escape the embarrassment which would otherwise have been inevitable. The Indians made a charge, advancing with their blankets held in front of them, and approaching by fits and starts and in an irregular formation. It would seem, too, that they relied, not a little, upon the traditionally terrifying effect of their war-whoops, and the scene is described as one likely to strike terror into the hearts of raw and inexperienced troops. A somewhat formidable attack on the rear was defeated by Captain Nash and Lieutenant Marigold at the head of the Battleford Rifles. Shortly after twelve o'clock Colonel Otter, having accomplished the object of his reconnaissance, determined to retreat, a movement attended with most serious difficulties, but which by a skilful disposition of the Artillery and the Rifles was effected in a masterly manner. The casualties on our side amounted to eight killed and thirteen wounded. The official account furnished by Colonel Otter is as follows, and will give a somewhat clearer view of the parts played by the troops engaged.

"I determined on a reconnaissance in force, and left Battleford on Friday, the 1st inst., at 2 p.m., with the following troops, viz:

"75 Mounted Police, of whom 50 were mounted, Captain Neale; 80 'B' Battery, R.C.A., Major Short; 45 'C' Company, I.S.C., Lieutenant Wadmore; 20 G.G. Foot Guards, Lieutenant Gray; 60 Queen's Own Rifles, Captain Brown; including the Ambulance Corps of same Regiment; 45 Battleford Rifles, Captain Nash; One Gatling gun and two seven-pounders belonging to Police; the latter being selected as more easy of transport than the nine-pounder guns; and a train of 48 waggons to carry men, rations, and stores.

"The disposition of our force was as follows. In the centre of the front line, and just behind the brow of the hill, was the Gatling, flanked on either side by a seven-pounder

brass gun, all under the personal supervision of Major Short, ably assisted by Captain Rutherford.

"The support of these guns consisted of the garrison division of 'B' Battery. Immediately to the rear, resting in a slight declivity, were the horses of the police and the waggon train; these were so well placed by Captain Neale that only two casualties occurred through the day, viz., the loss of two horses, one of the waggon train and Captain Rutherford's charger. On either flank of the artillery were the police. To the right and right rear was 'C' Company and detachment of Guards. To the left, lying on the lower edge of the hill, and extending nearly to the creek, was the Queen's Own; and protecting the right rear and ford was the company of Battleford Rifles. The positions thus described were, with some slight changes, retained by these corps more or less throughout the action.

"Too much praise cannot be given to the officers, non-commissioned officers and men engaged throughout the whole action for their admirable coolness and gallantry; the circumstances were most trying to raw troops, who without sleep or breakfast found themselves opposed to a cunning and determined enemy, thoroughly acquainted with the ground, adopting a new style of warfare and in numbers nearly double."

The most important operation of the campaign, namely, the capture of Batoche, has yet to be chronicled. The attacking party marched from Fish Creek on the 7th of May, Boulton's Scouts being in advance, and after due reconnoissance had been made, an attack was delivered on the 9th. The first of the general attack was made by the Grenadiers, supported by the artillery, and it was at this juncture that Captain Howard, of the United States Army, performed such good service with the Gatling. Bush, concealed rifle pits, entrenchments, and dense woods, added to the difficulties of the attack.

The enemy occupied the head of the gully leading to the river, and this was cleared in a most brilliant way by Colonel Williams at the head of the Midland Regiment. Reinforcements arriving, it was determined to make a concentrated effort very shortly.

"The night which we had now to spend," writes one who was there, "will ever be a memorable one to the little force encamped before Batoche. In the corral, formed by about two hundred and fifty waggons, were enclosed some six hundred horses and about eight hundred men, besides teamsters. As soon as the men had their supper, strong pickets were placed outside the corral, in front of the waggons. The Midland, under Colonel Williams, with one company of the 90th, under Captain Forrest, took up a position on the edge of the bank overlooking the valley, to prevent a surprise from the enemy at that point; and during the whole night it kept up a dropping fire into the



bush which clothed the bank of the river. This was done to prevent the enemy in any numbers sneaking up under cover to surprise the little force, and to keep the men awake; two-thirds of the force kept vigilant watch on all sides, as sentries, pickets, and skirmishers; for it was felt by the General that if there was any enterprise in the enemy we would be exposed to a night attack, which, in our crowded position, would have been very harassing, if not serious. Before dawn next day the teamsters were all roused and the troops astir, in case that hour should be selected for an attack. The greatest danger would have been the stampeding of the horses, as it would have embarrassed our movements, so the teamsters were ordered to stand by them. But dawn came and early morning passed without any disturbance, and the men got their breakfast in peace; thus a bright Sunday morning opened upon a scene of war and anxiety."

Early on Monday another reconnaissance was made and everything was now in order for the final onset. The fighting was at first very hot. Before long a messenger arrived from the insurgent Riel with a view to secure the safety of the women and children in his camp.

The Midlanders, the Grenadiers, and the 90th were soon in the thick of it; the artillery came thundering up; before the enemy could realise the position the attacking force had been skilfully manœuvred into a strong line extending over a mile. A charge, a deadly hail of bullets, a steady determination rendered furious by the death of their comrades—and the avenging army of Canadians was in the stubbornly held town of Batoche.

Riel, after scheming to obtain good terms for himself, decamped, shortly to be captured by some scouts.

In accordance with the plan we have adopted, we subjoin here the official account of this, the most important engagement which the newly organized army of Canada had yet undertaken.

General Middleton writes: "My force was then composed of:—

'A' Battery, two guns, 86 officers and men; Winnipeg half Battery, two guns, 40 officers and men; one Gatling gun.

10th Royal Grenadiers . . . . .	210	officers and men.
90th Regiment . . . . .	254	„ „
Detachment Midland Regiment	81	„ „
Boulton's Mounted Infantry .	65	„ „
French's Scouts . . . . .	28	„ „
	<u>724</u>	

“Two companies of the Midland, 60 men in all, under Lieutenant-Colonel Williams, were extended on the left and moved up to the cemetery, and the Grenadiers, 200 strong, under Lieutenant-Colonel Grasset, prolonged the line to the right beyond the church, the 90th being in support. The Midland and Grenadiers, led by Lieutenant-Colonels Williams and Grasset, the whole led by Lieutenant-Colonel Straubenzee, in command of the Brigade, then dashed forward with a cheer and drove the enemy out of the pits in front of the cemetery and the ravine to the right of it, thus clearing the angle at the turn of the river. During all this time a heavy fire was kept up from the other side of the river, which annoyed our advance. This was kept down as we best could by a few of the Midland Regiment in pits on the bank of the river, and one company of the 90th Regiment was sent to support Lieutenant-Colonel Williams on the extreme left. The Midland Regiment and Grenadiers kept pushing on gallantly, led by Colonels Straubenzee, Williams, and Grasset, until they held the edge of the bluffs, surrounding the left part of the plain, where the houses were. Just before this a most promising young officer, Lieutenant Fitch of the Grenadiers, was killed. At this period one of the Winnipeg Battery guns was got into position where it could shell the houses on the plain, but after two or three rounds it was disabled and a gun from ‘A’ Battery took its place, and fired a few rounds, but not much damage was done, as the houses were not brick or stone. During this time I advanced the 90th so as to prolong the line of attack, and eventually brought down the Surveyor’s Scouts, Boulton’s Mounted Infantry, and French’s Scouts, and dismounting still further prolonged the line on the right. The Gatling was now ordered up in front of the 90th to take the houses in flank, which was gallantly done by Lieutenant Rivers, ‘A’ Battery, and Captain Howard, and after a few volleys a general advance was made, with rattling cheers, and the whole of the houses were taken, the prisoners released, and the position virtually captured. It was at this period that the late lamented Captain French was killed by a shot from the ravine, while looking out of the window at Batoche’s House. This officer’s loss was keenly felt and mourned by the whole force. He had been with the force from the commencement and he was always ready for the front, and his cheerfulness and good-humour was proverbial and had a cheerful effect on the whole camp. I had already brought Captain French’s name to your notice in terms of strong recommendation. A Company of the Grenadiers was sent along the river on our left up to the house of the rebel Champagne, and a company of the 90th was sent well forward on the right, as a few desultory shots were fired from a ravine there, and by evening all firing ceased, and

I sent up to the camp for the men's blankets and food, and we bivouacked for the night around the buildings.

"As regards the actual number of men engaged out of my total force of 724 officers and men, owing to having to leave 100 men to protect my camp, leaving wounded and sick men, cooks, ammunition carriers, assistants to ambulances, etc., I was only able to bring 495 men into the engagement, and this included the artillery and Gatling, which owing to the nature of the position were not able to do so much damage as the infantry. So that with about 400 men we drove with heavy loss a force of (taking the lowest estimation) 600 half-breeds and Indians, many of them armed with long-range rifles, and who were considered the finest and best prairie fighters in the country, out of a strong position, carefully selected and entrenched by themselves.

"In concluding, I trust I may be allowed to think that the country has every reason to be proud of the conduct of its Volunteer Militia in this its first essay in arms, unassisted by regular troops, and it has equal reason to be proud of the Department which called out, equipped, and transported to the scene of action, from distances varying from 300 to 3,000 miles, this force, and, without failure in commissariat or transport, enabled the officer commanding to carry out, under exceptional circumstances, a successful campaign in less than four months."

It remains to notice that part of the campaign which fell to the lot of General Strange's column. Very shortly after the first news of the insurrection became known General Strange was appointed to the command of the Alberta district, and was instrumental in raising a troop of horse known as the Alberta Mounted Rifles.

It fell to General Strange's column to avenge the horrible massacre of Frog Lake, by which on the 2nd of April—Maundy Thursday—thirteen British subjects were murdered in cold blood. Some of the occupants of Fort Pitt, some thirty in number, threw themselves on the mercy of Big Bear, and the remainder, thanks to the courage and adroitness of Inspector Dickens of the mounted police,\* reached Battleford. General Strange's column arrived at Fort Pitt on the 25th of May, and at once determined to make a demonstration in force against the hostile Indians who were still in the locality. As a consequence of this demonstration, and the subsequent operations, the turbulent Big Bear fled, and eventually surrendered. The principal incidents of the expedition are described by General Strange in the following terms:—

"On receiving this intelligence from Major Steele on the evening of the 27th and that

\* A son of the celebrated novelist.

the enemy were in his front, and that the scouts had counted 187 lodges, I immediately marched with all the troops at my disposal, leaving a company of the 65th under Captain Giroux to fortify and protect what remained of Fort Pitt. Camp equipage and stores I left behind, marching without tents. I had only three days' rations, no supplies having reached me since I left Edmonton, and the force was on reduced rations. My force consisted of 197 Infantry, rank and file, a twenty-seven Cavalry and one nine-pounder M.L.R. gun. Wishing to advance quickly I used all available waggons to carry W.L.I. detachment, and sent 65th detachment down river in flat boats to effect junction within striking distance of enemy.

"On reaching Major Steele I corralled the waggons under Captain Wright. I could not spare a guard to leave with them, but the teamsters were mostly armed. Advancing about four miles I found the enemy occupying a very advantageous position on a thickly wooded ridge from which they were signalling. I immediately extended and attacked, and drove them from the position without loss on our part. Major Steele with N.W.M.P. and scouts under his command, carried the position on the left with the assistance of one Company W.L.I. . . . The 65th, who, however, left their boats and advanced with alacrity on the first sound of the firing, leaving their uneaten dinners behind them. . . . had no blankets, great coats, or rations, having left everything in the boat, and their comrades in the W.L.I. had little to share with them.

"At daybreak on the 28th I again moved forward towards Frenchman's Butte, finding numerous trails joining the enemy's forces from every direction. About 6.30 A.M. we found the enemy occupying an apparently impregnable position, presenting a salient hill forming a bare glæcis slope, entirely exposed to fire from rifle-pits, in thick bush extending along the crest. The creek expanding into Muskeg covered the front and flanks of the position, which extended about two miles.

"Having reconnoitred to the edge of the creek without being fired on, as the enemy wished apparently to draw us into an ambuscade, I returned to the crest of the hill and brought up the gun, which opened fire and quickly drew a heavy response, and I deployed the small force at my disposal, throwing forward Major Steele's police and scouts dismounted down the hill to a fringe of willow brush near the edge of the creek. The 65th, under Lieutenant-Colonel Hughes, with two companies W.L.I. under Major Thibcaudeau, extended on their right. The two companies W.L.I. under Lieutenant Colonel O. Smith on the hill in support, Major Hatton, Alberta Mounted Rifles, covering right flank where the wood was thickest.

"The field-gun under Lieutenant Strange and Sergeant O'Connor, N.W.M.P., did good work, silencing some of the rifle-pits, and changing its position to enfilade in succession each face of the hill and rifle pits. It was subsequently ascertained that six at least of the enemy were torn by shells which exploded in the pits. . . . All the troops did their duty steadily to my entire satisfaction. My thanks are specially due to Major Dale, Brigade-Major; Major Steele, commanding Cavalry; Lieutenant-Colonel Smith and Hughes, commanding battalions; Captain Wright, Transport Officer; Lieutenant Strange, A.D.C., and Surgeon Pennefather, who made arrangements for the field hospital, and Surgeon Pari."

The whole force of the expedition was finally concentrated to effect the capture of this evanescent chieftain, who eventually, on being pursued by detachments under Colonel Otter and Colonel Irvine, surrendered to Sergeant Burton of the Mounted Police. So practically ended the Rebellion in the North-West, so far as the military are concerned.

We will now consider somewhat more in detail the composition of the force regarded as a factor in the fighting strength of the Empire. A recent commission elicited various opinions which are of undoubted interest in this connection. Sir Selby Smyth records his opinion that the Canadians possess, "in a marked degree, qualities to make excellent soldiers, being both hardy and industrious, used to rough life, easily subjected to discipline, and willing to submit to necessary authority. . . . There are no better soldiers than Canada can produce." Another authority, in a somewhat critical summary, quotes Batoche to prove that Canadians do well if well led, and in which emphasis is laid on the final dashing movement. "Colonel Staubenzee walked unconcernedly up and down the line and spoke to the men lying down under cover, or to their officers, saying what he was going to do, after which he gave the command to 'charge,' which was responded to with a cheer. It was the first charge of the campaign, and it brought a new life into the men, and the next news that General Middleton received in camp was that Batoche was taken, with many rebel prisoners."

The force as at present organized may be said to date from the year 1855, and consists, as has been said, of the Active Militia and the Sedentary Militia, composed of battalions of cavalry, artillery, and infantry, officered after the fashion of the British service, during good behaviour, and recruited by men who undertake to serve for three years. The Sedentary Militia consists of all those, under the age of sixty, who are not enrolled in the Active militia, and are capable of bearing arms, with the ordinary exemptions.

The whole is commanded by a major-general, with the assistance of an adjutant-general and permanent staff.

The origin of the Permanent Force may be referred to the time when the Imperial troops were quartered in Canada, and when it was permitted individual officers and men who wished to obtain a more thorough military training to spend a brief period with regiments to learn their duties. This led to the institution of military schools in the various provinces, where short and long courses of instruction can be obtained and certificates granted. With the growth of the country these schools were enlarged, and a small permanent force was organized, composed first of two battalions of artillery, and subsequently schools of cavalry and infantry, until now the permanent force of the country consists of about two thousand men, including the Mounted Police, which is one thousand strong. This force is divided up into permanent corps, of about one hundred and fifty men each, which form the various schools of instruction throughout the country for artillery, cavalry, and infantry tactics and drill. The Active Militia are called out annually to do twelve days' drill, which is generally performed in brigade camp, or under canvas at battalion headquarters.\* Military schools have been established, and efficiency in all branches has been sedulously cultivated by the institution of competitions in the various arms, the excellence attained in which has been frequently observed in the meetings held in England. It may, indeed, be safely asserted that Canada supplies in a marked extent positive and overwhelming proof of the vast value in a military sense of the "uncalled capital" which should be at the command of the Empire and its Sovereign.

In any account of the Canadian Army mention must of necessity be made of the Royal Military College at Kingston, which is aptly described as "foremost amongst the military institutions of the Dominion, and a credit alike to it and to the mother country." This college was founded some fifteen years ago (in 1875), and was organized at once on a military basis, the gentlemen cadets being duly enlisted and during their period of pupilage being subject to the Queen's Regulations and "such other rules and regulations as Her Majesty's troops are subject to." They constitute, in fact, a Cadet Battalion in separate companies. Four commissions are granted yearly in the Imperial Army—one in each arm—to graduates in the college, lieutenantancies in the Militia being given to those graduates who do not obtain these commissions.

By the Regulations, graduates of the Royal Military College of Canada holding rank in the Militia, but not at the time belonging to any corps of Active Militia, will wear the

\* We have availed ourselves of Major Boulton's able summary of the present position of the force.

infantry uniform when they desire to appear in uniform, with the exception that the badge or head-dress will be, instead of a numeral, the College Crest encircled with motto surmounted with Imperial Crown—crest, a mailed arm upholding a maple-leaf; motto, "Truth, Duty, Valour."

The Dominion Artillery Association above referred to dates from 1875, and has a continuous record of progress to boast since that date. To quote from the official report of last year—"The affiliations represent a force of about 3,000 officers and men, every one of whom took part in the several competitions, which were of a purely technical nature, and carried out under the supervision of the Inspector and Assistant Inspector of Artillery." The patron is the Governor-General, and the vice-patrons the Lieutenant-Governors of the various Provinces, with the Commander-in-Chief of the Militia, and the Adjutant-General, Colonel Walker Powell, to whose indefatigable exertions it is mainly due that the Militia Force in Canada has attained its present state of efficiency.\*

The Dominion of Canada Rifle Association dates from 1877, and is under the patronage of the Governor-General, the list of vice-patrons being somewhat more extended than that of the Artillery Association—the General and Admiral in command of H.M. Military and Naval Forces, North America, the Minister of Militia, and the Premiers of the Dominion and the Provinces being added to those mentioned as the vice-patrons of the Artillery Association. In our reference to the several regiments we shall take opportunity to mention some of the triumphs won by members of the two Associations.

We will now consider, somewhat more in detail, the composition of the Army of Canada.

The Permanent Corps consist of the Cavalry School Corps, Quebec; the Regiment of Canadian Artillery; the Company of Mounted Infantry; the Infantry School Corps. The organization of the Permanent Corps dates from 1886, a statute passed in that year authorising the raising of one troop of cavalry, three batteries of artillery, and not more than five companies of infantry—the whole strength not to exceed one thousand men, and to be in addition to the ordinary active Militia. Not only do these permanent corps provide a splendid training establishment for all ranks, but, when occasion arises, as it did in the North-West Rebellion, they constitute a sort of *corps d'élite*, being composed of men who have had longer military training. It may not be out of place here

\* The writer takes this opportunity of acknowledging the courteous assistance which has been afforded him as well by Colonel Walker Powell as Mr. C. F. Just, the Librarian of the Agency for the Dominion in England.

to refer to the regulations affecting uniform which apply to the Dominion army. These are as follows:—

The uniform of the Militia is similar to that worn by the regular army; the facings of Cavalry are buff, Artillery scarlet, and Infantry corps clothed in scarlet are blue; those of Rifle corps clothed in green are scarlet; the 5th Battalion are permitted to wear the "kilt" with "bonnet" of established pattern of Highland regiments.

It will be of interest, moreover, to notice the regulations affecting the colours of the Infantry regiments. These are to be of silk, three feet nine inches flying, and three feet deep on the pike, exclusive of the fringe, which is about two inches in depth—the length of the pike, including the Royal Crest, to be eight feet seven and a half inches; the cords and tassels to be crimson and gold, mixed.

The Royal, or first, colour of every regiment is to be the Great Union, the Imperial colour of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, in which the cross of St. George is conjoined with the crosses of St. Andrew and St. Patrick, on a blue field. The first colour is to bear in the centre the Imperial Crown, and the number of the regiment underneath in gold Roman characters.

The regimental, or second, colour is to be of the colour of the facing of the regiment, with the Union in the upper canton. The number of the regiment is to be embroidered in gold Roman characters in the centre. On this colour, too, are to appear "the devices, distinctions, and mottoes which have been conferred by Royal authority; the whole to be ensigned with the Imperial Crown." As regards the precedence of the various corps the order is as follows:—

- 1st, The Gentlemen Cadets of the Royal Military College.
- 2nd, Cavalry School Corps.
- 3rd, The Governor-General's Body Guard of Cavalry.
- 4th, Regiments, Squadrons, and Troops of Cavalry.
- 5th, Regiment Canadian Artillery.
- 6th, Field Batteries.
- 7th, Garrison Artillery.
- 8th, Engineers.
- 9th, Mounted Infantry School Corps.
- 10th, Infantry School Corps.
- 11th, The Governor-General's Foot Guards.
- 12th, Battalions of Infantry and Rifles.



13th, Provisional Battalions and Companies of Infantry or Rifles not in Battalion.

14th, Naval Brigades.

The corps of each arm take precedence according to the date of formation.

Before, however, considering the regiments in existence, some mention must be made of two other corps, one of which has ceased to exist, and the other, while retaining its Canadian title, has become merged in a regiment of the Imperial Army.

In 1841 was raised the ROYAL CANADIAN RIFLE REGIMENT, which had a career of some thirty years, being only disbanded in 1870, after having achieved a high position as a regiment. The uniform was somewhat similar to that of the King's Royal Rifles, the famous 60th, which, it will be remembered, originally bore the title of the Royal American Regiment.

The ROYAL CANADIANS, now the 1st Battalion of the Prince of Wales's Leinster Regiment, are the other corps to which we refer. Not only do they claim mention here on account of their strictly Canadian origin, but because, so far as we know, their formation was the first instance of a Colonial corps, as such, being raised for the Imperial Service. The period of the formation of the Royal Canadians was a memorable one. The Indian Mutiny was assuming proportions of terrible seriousness; people—and these not alarmists alone—began to fear for the integrity of the empire. Little wonder was it then that the proposal to raise the Royal Canadians was received with enthusiasm. The whole of the men and nineteen of the officers were to be Canadians, the rest of the latter were to be appointed from the Imperial Army. "The regiment," writes an author before quoted, "was organized in the old historic citadel of Quebec. For want of better, it was uniformed in the relics of bygone ages, stowed away among the military stores of the country. It only lacked pigtails and powder to make it appear as if one of the Duke's veteran battalions of the Peninsula had come to life. Especially curious to the people of England was the motley uniform of the 100th, for the old coatee had been long forgotten; and on our arrival in England we marched to Shorncliffe camp in this picturesque but obsolete uniform. The English people wondered what kind of soldiers had landed on their shores."

In the summer of 1858, the Royal Canadians left Canada for England, 1,200 strong, and on arrival at Shorncliffe were clothed in the ordinary uniform of Royal regiments, the Prince of Wales presenting them with their colours, and with the title of the Prince of Wales's Royal Canadian Regiment. It is indeed claimed that this was the first public ceremony performed by His Royal Highness. After service in Europe for some eight

years, the regiment returned to Canada, again going to England the following year, and afterwards serving in India and elsewhere. Many, however, of the first members of the regiment left it upon the completion of ten years' service, and remained in Canada, a goodly number of them taking an active part as militiamen in the rebellion of 1870. Amongst these may be mentioned Colonel Cassault, one of the first lieutenants of the regiment; Colonel Duchesnay, Colonel Fletcher, Colonel De Bellefeuille, Colonel Van Straubenzic, who joined the regiment in England; Colonel Grasset, who commanded the Royal Grenadiers in the campaign of 1885; Captain Henson, of London, Sergeant-Major Burn, Lieutenant Carriere, Lieutenant Brown, Sergeant-Major Rance, Quartermaster Grant, Lieutenant William Palmer Clark, Lieutenant J. G. Ridout, of Toronto, Colonel Lake, of Broadview, N.W.T., Carrol Ryan, E. A. Batic, and many others, all qualified by discipline in the regiment.

The general militia of the Dominion—Cavalry, Artillery, Infantry, and Rifles—as they now stand, are as under:—

#### CAVALRY.

The Governor-General's Body Guard for Ontario. Dragoons.

1st Regiment of Cavalry. Hussars.	5th Regiment of Cavalry. Dragoons.
2nd Regiment of Cavalry. Dragoons.	6th Regiment of Cavalry. Hussars.
3rd Provisional Regiment of Cavalry. "The Prince of Wales's Canadian Dragoons."	8th "Princess Louise's New Brunswick" Regiment of Cavalry. Hussars.
4th Regiment of Cavalry. Hussars.	The Queen's Own Canadian Hussars.

#### INDEPENDENT TROOPS.

King's Troop of Cavalry. Hussars.	The Princess Louise Dragoon Guards.
Prescott Troop of Cavalry. Dragoons.	Winnipeg Troop of Cavalry. Dragoons.

#### FIELD ARTILLERY.

1st Brigade of Field Artillery.

#### FIELD BATTERIES.

Durham Field Battery of Artillery.	Montreal Field Battery of Artillery.
Gananoque Field Battery of Artillery.	Newcastle Field Battery of Artillery.
Hamilton Field Battery of Artillery.	Ottawa Field Battery of Artillery.
Kingston Field Battery of Artillery.	Quebec Field Battery of Artillery.
London Field Battery of Artillery.	Richmond Field Battery of Artillery.

Shefford Field Battery of Artillery.	Wolland Canal Field Battery of Artillery.
Sidney Field Battery of Artillery.	
Toronto Field Battery of Artillery.	Winnipeg Field Battery of Artillery.
	Woodstock (N.B.) Field Battery of Artillery.

## GARRISON ARTILLERY.

1st "Halifax" Brigade of Garrison Artillery.	No. 1 Battery, Levis Garrison Artillery.
British Columbia Brigade of Garrison Artillery.	No. 2 Battery, Levis Garrison Artillery.
	Lunenburg Battery of Garrison Artillery.
Montreal Brigade of Garrison Artillery.	Mahone Bay Battery of Garrison Artillery.
New Brunswick Brigade of Garrison Artillery.	Pictou Battery of Garrison Artillery.
	No. 1 Battery, Quebec Garrison Artillery.
Prince Edward Island Brigade of Garrison Artillery.	No. 2 Battery, Quebec Garrison Artillery.
	No. 3 Battery, Quebec Garrison Artillery.
Coburg Battery of Garrison Artillery.	Toronto Battery of Garrison Artillery.
Digby Battery of Garrison Artillery.	Yarmouth Battery of Garrison Artillery.
Gaspé Battery of Garrison Artillery.	
	Mountain Artillery, Sault Ste. Marie Half Battery.

## ENGINEERS.

Brighton Company of Engineers.	Charlottetown Engineer Company.
	Montreal Company of Engineers.

## INFANTRY AND RIFLES.

## Governor-General's Foot Guards.

1st Battalion "Prince of Wales's Regiment."	11th Battalion of Infantry, "Argenteuil Rangers."
2nd Battalion "Queen's Own Rifles of Canada."	12th Battalion of Infantry, "York Rangers."
3rd Battalion "Victoria Rifles of Canada."	13th Battalion of Infantry.
5th Battalion "Royal Scots of Canada."	14th Battalion "The Princess of Wales's Own Rifles."
6th Battalion "Fusiliers."	15th Battalion, "Argyle Light Infantry."
7th Battalion "Fusiliers."	16th "Prince Edward" Battalion of Infantry.
8th Battalion "Royal Rifles."	
9th Battalion Rifles, "Voltigeurs de Quebec."	17th "Levis" Battalion of Infantry.
10th Battalion "Royal Grenadiers."	

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 18th "Prescott" Battalion of Infantry.                       | 46th "East Durham" Battalion of Infantry.              |
| 19th "Lincoln" Battalion of Infantry.                        | 47th "Frontenac" Battalion of Infantry.                |
| 20th Halton Battalion "Lorne Rifles."                        | 49th "Hastings" Battalion of Rifles.                   |
| 21st Battalion "Essex Fusiliers."                            | 50th Battalion of Infantry, "Huntingdon Borderers."    |
| 22nd Battalion "Oxford Rifles."                              | 51st Battalion of Infantry, "Hemmingford Rangers."     |
| 23rd "Beauce" Battalion of Infantry.                         | 52nd "Brome" Battalion of Light Infantry.              |
| 24th "Kent" Battalion of Infantry.                           | 53rd "Sherbrooke" Battalion of Infantry.               |
| 25th "Elgin" Battalion of Infantry.                          | 54th "Richmond" Battalion of Infantry.                 |
| 26th "Middlesex" Battalion of Light Infantry.                | 55th Battalion "Megantic Light Infantry."              |
| 27th "Lambton" Battalion of Infantry, "St. Clair Borderers." | 56th "Grenville" Battalion, "Lisgar Rifles."           |
| 28th "Perth" Battalion of Infantry.                          | 57th Battalion of Infantry, "Peterborough Rangers."    |
| 29th "Waterloo" Battalion of Infantry.                       | 58th "Compton" Battalion of Infantry.                  |
| 30th "Wellington" Battalion of Rifles.                       | 59th "Stormont and Glengarry" Battalion of Infantry.   |
| 31st "Grey" Battalion of Infantry.                           | 60th "Missisquoi" Battalion of Infantry.               |
| 32nd "Bruce" Battalion of Infantry.                          | 61st "Montmagny and L'Islet" Battalion of Infantry.    |
| 33rd "Huron" Battalion of Infantry.                          | 62nd Battalion, "St. John Fusiliers."                  |
| 34th "Ontario" Battalion of Infantry.                        | 63rd "Halifax" Battalion of Rifles.                    |
| 35th Battalion of Infantry, "Simcoe Foresters."              | 64th Battalion of Rifles, "Voltigeurs de Beauharnois." |
| 36th "Peel" Battalion of Infantry.                           | 65th Battalion, "Mount Royal Rifles."                  |
| 37th "Haldimand" Battalion of Rifles.                        | 66th Battalion, "Princess Louise Fusiliers."           |
| 38th Battalion "Dufferin Rifles of Canada."                  | 67th Battalion, "Carleton Light Infantry."             |
| 39th "Norfolk" Battalion of Rifles."                         |  |
| 40th "Northumberland" Battalion of Infantry.                 |  |
| 41st "Brockville" Battalion of Rifles.                       |  |
| 42nd "Brockville" Battalion of Infantry.                     |  |
| 43rd "Ottawa and Carleton" Battalion of Rifles.              |  |
| 44th "Welland" Battalion of Infantry.                        |  |
| 45th "West Durham" Battalion of Infantry.                    |  |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 68th "King's County" Battalion of Infantry.                                | 83rd "Joliette" Battalion of Infantry.                       |
| 69th "1st Annapolis" Battalion of Infantry.                                | 84th "St. Hyacinthe" Battalion of Infantry.                  |
| 70th "Champlain" Battalion of Infantry.                                    | 85th Battalion of Infantry.                                  |
| 71st "York" Battalion of Infantry.   | 86th "Three Rivers" Battalion of Infantry.                   |
| 72nd "2nd Annapolis" Battalion of Infantry.                                | 87th "Quebec" Battalion of Infantry.                         |
| 73rd "Northumberland" Battalion of Infantry.                               | 88th "Kamouraska and Charlevoix" Battalion of Infantry.      |
| 74th Battalion of Infantry.  | 89th "Temiscouata and Rimouski" Battalion of Infantry.       |
| 75th "Lunenburg" Battalion of Infantry.                                    | 90th "Winnipeg" Battalion of Rifles.                         |
| 76th Battalion of Rifles, "Voltigeurs de Chateauguay."                     | 91st Battalion, "Manitoba Light Infantry."                   |
| 77th "Wentworth" Battalion of Infantry.                                    | 92nd "Dorchester" Battalion of Infantry.                     |
| 78th "Colchester, Hants, and Pictou" Battalion of Infantry, "Highlanders." | 93rd "Cumberland" Battalion of Infantry.                     |
| 79th "Shefford" Battalion of Infantry, "Highlanders."                      | 94th "Victoria" Battalion of Infantry, "Argyle Highlanders." |
| 80th "Nicolet" Battalion of Infantry.                                      | 95th Battalion, "Manitoba Grenadiers."                       |
| 81st "Portneuf" Battalion of Infantry.                                     | 96th "District of Algoma" Battalion of Rifles.               |
| 82nd "Queen's County" Battalion of Infantry.                               |  |

## INDEPENDENT COMPANIES.

- |                                     |                         |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| New Westminster Rifle Company.      | St. John Rifle Company. |
| St. Jean Baptiste Infantry Company. |                         |

It must be remembered that previous to the period of Confederation each province had its separate Militia service, and under the Regulations and Orders, such of the officers of those Militia corps who were not re-enrolled on the passing of the Act of 1868, are considered as officers "on the retired list from the Militia of the province to which they belong," and are permitted to use the uniform of their regiment. It should not, moreover, be forgotten that the organization of the Militia is due almost entirely to Sir George Cartier, who was responsible for the "Militia and Defence Act" of 1868, on the lines of which the more recent enactments introduced by Sir A. Caron have been based. It must

also be borne in mind that the military forces of the Dominion have now the sole responsibility of the defence of the land passing under the domination, the only stations for Imperial troops being at Victoria and Halifax. "The regulation annual drill," as regards the City Corps—which roughly amount to nearly a fourth of the whole number—is put at twelve days annually, the Rural Corps having the same time biennially, in Camps of Exercise. A glance at the position Canada occupies with regard to the United States—a country which, it must be remembered, put, during the Civil War, no fewer than three million men into the field from first to last—will show of what vital importance to the empire it is that the Dominion Army should be effective. Not many months ago a clever, if somewhat pessimistic, writer in the *United Service Magazine* summed up the situation in the following words:—

"Casting a glance at the network of American railways we will find that they are admirably adapted for offensive operations against Canada; while offering no important railway parallel to and near the frontier, the destruction of which would affect the concentration of troops. The objectives for America are clearly marked—Halifax, Quebec, Montreal, Prescott, Kingston, Ottawa, Toronto, Winnipeg, and Vancouver. Halifax and Vancouver are certain to be most energetically attacked, for they will be the naval bases, besides Bermuda, from which England would carry on her naval attack on the American coasts and commerce. The American railway lines lead admirably for their purpose on to Quebec, Montreal, Prescott, Kingston, and Toronto. Albany and Bellow's Falls would be the bases of operations on the first four named towns, while the resources of the greatest western towns of Chicago, &c., can be easily concentrated at Detroit, and those of the eastern towns at Buffalo, for the invasion of the Niagara district and the surrounding of the Toronto Force."

Without necessarily subscribing to the conclusions the writer draws from his estimate of the position, it is obvious that, if we except the troops on the North-West frontier of India, there are no corps within the empire which are in a position of greater possible responsibility. Within the confines of a work such as the present, it would be out of place to refer more definitely to the disturbing influences which may at any time render the possibility referred to an imminent one. The nature of these influences is familiar to most, and it would be absurd to ignore the fact that a certain proportion of the American nation is actuated by unfriendly feelings towards England, and that in the event of this proportion of the populace attaining supreme power in directing the policy of the country, an attack upon the frontier of Canada would be an almost certain contingency.

It would be obviously impossible to attempt, however interesting the result might be, anything of the nature of a full description of the various regiments of the Canadian Militia. We have been careful in relating the principal actions in which they have been engaged to mention those corps which were more particularly concerned, and to enter more in detail into the performances and achievements of any one regiment would involve a repetition interesting only to the specific corps referred to.

Dating as we must the constitution of the present force from a comparatively recent date (1868), we find, as has been observed, that the Red River Expedition, the Fenian Raid, and the North-West Rebellion are the principal occasions in the way of actual war services to which the corps can refer. There have, of course, arisen circumstances from time to time which have called for a demonstration of military forces. Such were the anticipated riots at St. John (N.B.), Belleville, and Quebec; at Montreal in July, 1878; the occasion of the anticipated disturbances on the Ottawa and Occidental Railway at St. Andrews; at Long Point, Port Dover, and Cape Breton; at Aylmer, Tamworth, and Winnipeg. But these occasions, on which the troops employed performed their duty satisfactorily, are not such as can be with propriety described in any account of a force of the rank and position to which the Canadian Militia not unjustly lays claim.

The CAVALRY SCHOOL CORPS, QUEBEC, have, as has before been mentioned, contributed not a little to the status acquired by the Militia. They were amongst the first troops ordered forward in the most recent campaign, while one at least of the present officers served during the Fenian Raid. In the North-West Rebellion they were under the command of Colonel Turnbull, and were stationed at Touchwood Hills, a position which prevented their participating to any great extent in the principal engagements.

A recent testimony to the calibre of the Canadian Cavalry may here be quoted. At a recent Commission, Colonel Jenyns was examined as to Canadian horses. He stated that "they were wonderfully good horses . . . as good troopers as he ever saw," and that "they stand a great amount of hard work and exposure."

The REGIMENT OF CANADIAN ARTILLERY rendered, as will be remembered, services of the greatest value during the North-West Rebellion, the present Lieutenant-Colonel, C. E. Montizambert, being in command of the Artillery, while most of the other officers played a distinguished part. The "A" Battery were attached to the column under General Middleton, and at Fish Creek Hill Majors Drury and Peters particularly distinguished themselves; the shell firing being described by an eye-witness as having a splendid effect, the roar of the cannon, and the scream of the bursting shells giving

encouragement to those engaged on our side and evidently dismaying the enemy. Lieutenant Rivers was in command of the Gatling guns which did such good service at Batoche, during the capture of which a portion of the Battery had to share the uninteresting but necessary task of guarding the corral. The "A" Battery subsequently took part in the pursuit of Big Bear. The "B" Battery under Major Short were attached to Colonel Otter's column, and at Cut Knife Hill were actively engaged, Captains Rutherford and Farley and Lieutenants Pelletier and Prower being amongst the officers present. Major Short had a narrow escape, a bullet passing through his cap.\* Amongst those of the brigade who lost their lives during the campaign were Acting-Bombardier Armsworth and Gunners Sharbentier, Cook, De Manolly, and Phillips; while amongst the wounded were Lieutenant Pelletier, Staff-Sergeant Mawhinney, Corporal Morton, Acting Bombardier Taylor, and Gunners Asselin, Fairbanks, Harrison, Inrie, Langarell, Ouellette, Reynolds, Stout, Twohy, Turner, and Wilson. Of the officers some have served in the Red River and Fenian engagements, while two at least hold the valued medals for war services in the Imperial Army.

The same general remarks apply to the COMPANY OF MOUNTED INFANTRY, many of whose officers were also seen in the North-West Rebellion, and in the operations against the Fenians. Colonel Taylor and Riding-master Gardiner have the Imperial service medal. We may perhaps add, as showing that the Company of Mounted Infantry are not unmindful of the motto "If you wish for peace prepare for war," that in 1886, Major Buchan gained the Governor-General's Medal in the shooting competition.

The INFANTRY SCHOOL CORPS calls for a somewhat more lengthened notice. We have seen of what incalculable service they were during the North-West Rebellion. Some were attached to the column under General Middleton, and some to that under Colonel Otter, the former being commanded by Major Smith, and the latter by Lieutenant Wadmore. They were hotly engaged at Fish Creek, where Private Watson was killed, and Privates Punn, Jones, Harris, McDonald, H. Jones, and Sergeant Cummings more or less severely injured. During the attack on Batoche they were on the steamer *Northcote*, which operated from the river, and at one time were attacked by the whole strength of Riel from both sides; none, however, were wounded. The portion of the corps which was with Colonel Otter's column had some sharp fighting at Cut Knife Hill, Bugler Foulkes being killed and Serjeant-major Spackman being wounded.

\* According to Boulton, the only remark which this unpleasantly "close shave" elicited from the gallant major, was a regretful reflection that the "cap was a new one."



THE GOVERNOR GENERAL'S BODY GUARD FOR ONTARIO\* date from 1855, when they were organized to meet a recognised want. The name of Lieutenant-Colonel Denison will for long be identified with the troop, towards the high efficiency of which he has so much contributed. During the recent Rebellion the Body Guard were stationed at Humboldt. Many of the officers have, moreover, taken part in the engagements against the Fenians.

The 1st REGIMENT OF CAVALRY HUSSARS† and the 2nd REGIMENT OF CAVALRY DRAGOONS‡ both date from May, 1872, the headquarters of the former being at London, and of the latter at Oak Ridges. The Cavalry regiments as such have not been fortunate enough to take part in any of the more important engagements above referred to, though individual members have from time to time participated as Volunteers.

It must, however, be remembered that, "in the brave days of yore," there were Cavalry regiments amongst the Volunteers who served so well. Such, for instance, were Merritt's Yeomanry, who were in that famous battle of Queenstown Heights where Bröck fell, and the stern charge of the Canadian soldiers gave earnest of their heritage of victory.

The 3rd PROVISIONAL REGIMENT OF CAVALRY, the "Prince of Wales' Canadian Dragoons,"‡ date from April, 1875, and have their headquarters at Coburg. The commanding officer is Colonel Boulton—one of the diminishing number of old Canadian officers who took part in the fighting of the Rebellion of 1837-1838.

The 4th REGIMENT OF CAVALRY HUSSARS date from April, 1875, and perpetuate the memory of the Frontenac Horse. Their headquarters are at Kingston, and amongst their officers are some who have participated in the Fenian and North-West Expeditions.

The 5th REGIMENT OF CAVALRY DRAGOONS§ were organized in November, 1877, and were principally recruited from the St. Andrew's Cavalry Volunteers, and the 6th REGIMENT OF CAVALRY HUSSARS, better known as the Divisional Cavalry, date from November, 1879, and have their headquarters at Montreal. The commanding officer, Colonel Barr, served in the Red River Expedition.

\* The uniform of the Governor-General's Body Guard is blue with white facings, white plume on steel helmet, and silver lace. They have as a motto "Nulli Secundus."

† The uniform of the 1st Hussars is blue with buff facings; that of the 2nd Dragoons blue with white facings and plume of the same colour. It should be remembered that the regiments designated "Hussars" do not wear the livery associated by us with Cavalry of that name.

‡ The uniform of the 3rd Dragoons is scarlet with yellow facings, and black and red plume.

§ The uniform of the 5th Dragoons is blue, with white facings and white plume, and that of the 6th Hussars, blue with buff facings.

The 8th (Princess Louise's) NEW BRUNSWICK REGIMENT OF CAVALRY HUSSARS\* date from 1869. By General Order of 1884 they were allowed to assume as a badge the coronet of H.R.H. The Princess Louise, surmounting a Garter within which is the number VIII. together with the motto, "Regi Patriæque Fidelis." The 8th are not without distinction in the various competitions in which they have taken part. In 1882 Trooper Langstroth gained the Governor-General's Prize, and in 1884 and 1887 Sergeant G. Langstroth gained the Governor-General's Medal.

The QUEEN'S OWN CANADIAN HUSSARS † date from 1856 and were originally known as the Quebec Squadron; their headquarters still being at that city.

Of the Independent Troops the KING'S TROOP OF CAVALRY (Hussars) date from 12th June, 1874, the PRESCOTT TROOP OF CAVALRY (Dragoons) from December, 1871, the PRINCESS LOUISE'S DRAGOON GUARDS from 1872, and the WINNIPEG TROOP OF CAVALRY (Dragoons) from 1878. The uniform of the Independent Troops is, speaking generally, similar to that of the other Cavalry regiments, having blue uniform with white facings. The Princess Louise's Dragoons have as a badge a joint monogram of H.R.H. The Princess Louise and of the Marquis of Lorne, with the coronets of a Princess and Marquis. The Winnipeg Troop of Cavalry are the only regiment which as such took part in the North-West Rebellion, during which they were stationed at Fort Qu'Appelle, under the command of Captain Knight. In 1887 Trooper Clarke gained the Governor-General's Medal.

Of the MILITIA ARTILLERY a great deal might be said. They have their triumphs to chronicle, their steady progress to boast. Very early in the military records of the Dominion do we meet mention of the "Gunners." There was a Halifax Field Battery in 1776, concerning whom we have but space to chronicle their uniform. This was a blue cloth coat with a red-edged cape, the skirt turned up with white, and blue-faced lapels; they had, too, a white waistcoat, blue pants, and "half boots," with a round hat on which was the Hanoverian cockade. Somewhat later the addition of a gilt button in the centre of the cockade was added.

We do not propose to dwell here on the services rendered by the Artillery in the first and, in one sense, most important of Canada's wars, that of 1812. The exhaustive accounts by James and Thomson, and the graphic history we have before quoted, will give in full, though not wearisome detail, the various engagements and operations in

\* The uniform of the 8th Hussars is blue with buff facings.

† The uniform of the Queen's Own Canadian Hussars is blue with buff facings.

which the services of the force were displayed. We read of Swayzee's Militia Artillery adding their "deathful thurder" to the storm of sounds which rolled round Queenstown; we know how in later years the same force, despite their somewhat antiquated field-pieces, wrought right manfully and well on the occasions when ball and bullet and powder added their convincing roar to the stern mandate given to foes and rebels—"Thus far and no farther!"

We must content ourselves with reminding our readers of the more recent occurrences which have called for the performance of their devoir, and the official reports which have chronicled the zeal and completeness with which that devoir was rendered.

The FIRST BRIGADE OF FIELD ARTILLERY\* was organized in 1880, and the various Batteries on the dates following: The Durham Field Battery (Headquarters, Port Hope) in 1872; the Gananoque Field Battery, which so early as 1862 was organized as a Garrison Battery, was changed to Field Artillery in 1872; the Hamilton Field Battery was organized in December 1855; the Kingston Field Battery in 1856; the London Field Battery in 1856; the Montreal Field Battery in 1855; the Newcastle Field Battery in 1868; the Ottawa Field Battery in 1855; the Quebec Field Battery in 1855; the Richmond Field Battery in 1877; the Shefford Field Battery in 1872; the Sydney Field Battery in 1883; the Toronto Field Battery in 1866—first as Garrison and three months later as Field Artillery; the Welland Canal Field Battery in 1861; the Winnipeg Field Battery in 1871; and the Woodstock in 1866 as Garrison Artillery, and in 1874 as Field Artillery. Of recent years none of the Batteries—with the exception hereafter referred to—have been comparatively engaged in any important campaigns, though as might be expected many of the officers and men—amongst whom may be mentioned Major Hood of the 2nd Brigade, 1st Field Battery, Major McKenzie of the Gananoque, Major Peters of the London, Major Stevenson and Dr. Trawick of the Montreal, Major the Hon. H. Aylmer of the Richmond, Major Arnyrauld of the Shefford, Major King of the Welland—have seen service in the Fenian disturbances.

The Winnipeg Field Battery were fortunate enough to participate in the North-West Rebellion, and serve with considerable distinction in General Middleton's column in the operations at Fish Creek and against Batoche. In the former engagement they were not actively engaged, two of the guns under Captain Jarvis only being ordered forward, when, to use the General's expression, "the affair was nearly over." At Batoche,

\* The uniform of the Field Artillery is blue with scarlet facings.

however, they were in "the thick of it," Major Jarvis and Captain Coultee being specially referred to in the report for their valuable service. Major (then Captain) Young, of the battery, was acting as Brigade Major, and rendered most excellent service throughout the campaign. To him was consigned the custody of the rebel Riel after his surrender, "a charge which involved the utmost responsibility on Captain Young." No casualties were reported, despite the active participation of the battery in the engagement.

Amongst the peaceful triumphs of the Field Artillery we may mention that in 1882 the 1st Brigade gained the Gzowski Cup, and in 1889 Quartermaster-Sergeant Armstrong gained the McDougall Challenge Cup, and Quartermaster-Sergeant Ogg, the London Merchants' Cup; in 1889 Sergeant Loggie, of the Newcastle Field Battery, gained the Governor-General's Medal; in 1879 Sergeant McMullen, of the Winnipeg Field Battery Artillery, gained the Governor-General's Medal.

The GARRISON ARTILLERY have, as has been said, eighteen brigades and batteries, the dates of organization of which are as follows: the Halifax Brigade, 1869; the British Columbia Brigade, 1883; the Montreal Brigade, 1856; the New Brunswick Brigade, 1869; the Prince Edward Island Brigade, 1882; the Coburg Battery, 1866; the Digby Battery, 1869; the Gaspé Battery, 1873; the No. 1 Battery, Levis, 1873; the No. 2 Battery, Levis, 1880; the Lunenburg Battery, 1862; the Mahone Bay Battery, 1869; the Pietou Battery, 1875; the No. 1 Battery, Quebec, 1878; the No. 2 Battery, Quebec, 1880; the No. 3 Battery, Quebec, 1880; the Toronto Battery, 1866; the Yarmouth Battery, 1878. There is also the Sault Ste. Marie Half Battery of Mountain Artillery. Of these the Montreal Field Battery were attached to General Strange's column in the campaign of 1885, and were stationed at Regina, while the Halifax Battery supplied part of the Provisional Battalion under Colonel Bremner.

Other batteries, however, contributed individual members to the Canadian Artillery; from the Halifax Brigade, Bombardier Bontillier and Gunner Millie; from the Digby Battery, Gunner Woodman; from No. 3 Quebec Battery, Gunner Moison; from the New Brunswick Brigade, Sergeant Richardson; from the Yarmouth Battery, Gunner Porter. Of these Gunners Woodman and Moison were wounded.

The Garrison Artillery have gained several prizes in competitions. In 1879, Gunner Adams of the 1st Brigade Halifax Garrison Artillery, gained the Governor-General's Medal, which was again won in 1881 by Sergeant Shand, by Lieutenant Adams in 1882, by Captain Garrison in 1886 and 1887, and by Major Garrison in 1888. In 1880

Sergeant Butler of the British Columbia Brigade Garrison Artillery gained the Governor-General's Medal, Captain Jones in 1886, Sergeant Newbury and Bomb. Winsby in 1887 gaining the same prize.

Of the Montreal Brigade Garrison Artillery, Lieutenant Laurie gained the Governor-General's Medal in 1879, 1880, 1883, and 1884, Gunner Johnson gaining the same prize in 1882. The same prize was gained by Sergeant Hunter of the New Brunswick Brigade in 1876; by Sergeant Johnstone, of the Prince Edward Island Brigade Garrison Artillery in 1885, and 1886 by Corporal Gillis, and in 1875 by Lieutenant Macnaghtan of the Coburg Brigade; and in 1882 by Lieutenant Jonker of No. 2 Battery, Levis Brigade.

The ENGINEERS\* are as has been stated composed of three companies, the "Brighton" Company, organized in 1880, the "Charlottetown" Company, organized in 1878, and the "Montreal" Company organized in 1861. But also it may be as well to refer here to a fact which will not have escaped the notice of the reader, that the Batteries of Artillery and Companies of Engineers are given in alphabetical order, the last-named, as in the case of the Montreal Company of Engineers, having very often an earlier official date of commencement. It will, however, be observed hereafter when dealing with the Infantry Battalions, that the *order* is in many cases arbitrary, and some would say inexplicable. The Engineers have as Inspector the Professor of Fortifications of the Royal Military College (at the time of writing, Major Stuart Davidson, R.E.), and there are in addition a "Staff Officer to the Engineer Force," and an "Engineer Officer at Headquarters."

Though not, perhaps, strictly connected with the Engineer Companies, it may not be out of place to refer here to the very important work which devolves upon the Engineer Branch of the Militia Government Department. The Engineer Branch was organized in 1884, in consequence of the "transfer of the care and maintenance of all the military buildings and fortifications from the Department of Public Works to that of Militia and Defence." Amongst the duties for which this Branch is responsible are the highly important ones of devising and carrying out new works for military purposes, and the preservation in a state of due efficiency of those at present existing. It is obvious that to a greater or less extent this portion of their labour is one which lends itself the more readily to the co-operative and skilled existence of the more purely military components of the force.

\* The uniform of the Engineers is scarlet with blue facings.

The Engineer Companies have not been corporately engaged in warfare.

Amongst those of the corps who have gained prizes in competitions may be mentioned Private Miner who gained the McDougall Cup in 1870; Major McDougall, Sergeant Hooper, and Sapper Davison, who in the years 1880, 1882, 1884, and 1885, gained the Governor-General's Medal, Sapper Davison being twice successful; and Sapper Anderson who gained the Rideau Medal in 1889.

The GOVERNOR-GENERAL'S FOOT GUARDS\* take their place at the head of the Infantry. As now organized they date from 1872, and naturally occupy the position of a *corps d'élite*, and there exists between them and Her Majesty's Coldstream Guards a sentiment of that *camaraderie* which we have often had to notice as forming a bond between regiments widely separated. By the Regulations, "The Regimental, or Second, colour of the Governor-General's Foot Guards is to be blue, with the Union flag in the dexter canton, and bearing a star of six points, each of the points bearing the initials of one or more of the different Provinces of the Dominion with the Royal cypher in the centre, encircled with the Union-wreath. The Regimental title on a scroll beneath, surmounting a beaver, and a wreath of maple leaves with motto, *Civitas et Princeps cura nostra.*" In the North-West Rebellion they were attached to Colonel Otrer's column and saw plenty of service, their organization supplying a body of sharpshooters commanded by Captain Todd. After the relief of Battleford, when Captain Todd determined on reading Poundmaker a lesson, the "Ottawa Sharpshooters," as the band was called, advanced under Lieutenant Gray with the attacking column. In the attack on the enemy's position the Foot Guards were on the right flank and before the retreat was effected experienced some loss, Privates Osgood and Rogers being killed and Colour-Sergeant Winter and Private McGuilken being wounded. When the time came for reckoning up the cost, "the dead," writes Major Boulton, "were all taken off the field with the exception of Private Osgood of the Ottawa Sharpshooters (Governor-General's Foot Guards). Osgood being reported absent a party was sent back for him, which met the Ambulance Corps with a body which they said was Osgood's; this was not found to be incorrect until too late to again seek for it. Osgood when shot had, it appears, fallen into a couleé, and thus escaped the notice of those near him." It would be unfair to omit mention of the valuable services rendered by Lieutenant Bate, of the Foot Guards, who occupied an important and onerous position as Superintendent of

\* The Governor-General's Foot Guards wear scarlet uniforms with gold lace and bearskins.

Supply at "Swift Current." In accordance with our plan, we subjoin a short *précis* of the successes achieved by the Foot Guards at the butts.

In 1874 Sergeant Sutherland gained the Grand Aggregate Prize, in 1878 Private Morrison the McDougall Cup, and in 1879 Private Anderson the same. In 1883, 1884, and 1889 the Regiment gained the Gzowski Cup; in 1882 and 1884 Lieutenant Waldo and Sergeant Armstrong respectively gained the Governor-General's Medal. In 1884, 1887, 1888 and 1889 the Foot Guards gained the British Challenge Shield.

The 1st BATTALION PRINCE OF WALES' REGIMENT\* occupy the position of senior regiment on the present organization. Since their formation in November, 1859, the Regiment have not participated in any of the better-known engagements. In 1879 Private Rodgers gained the Governor-General's Medal.

The 2nd BATTALION QUEEN'S OWN RIFLES OF CANADA † date from April, 1860. Five years after their formation they took an active part in opposing the Fenian outbreak, and were somewhat prominently engaged at Ridgeway. It is very much to be wished that a more detailed account than now exists were written of the various occasions in which the "Fenian Scare" has called for the mustering of the Militia. Such an account would prove two things, which subjects of the Empire at large are prone to overlook—the power for annoyance possessed by even a contemptible foe, and the resources of the Dominion which fit it to cope not only with such, but with a more formidable and better organized attack. "We scorn them, but they sting," may well be the confession of sons of the Empire when reflecting on the loss in life and money entailed on us by savage warriors and treacherous Boers in far off Africa, by the fierce though chivalrous Maori, by the indomitable robber tribes of India, by miscreants within our borders whose practice of assassination and murder by dynamite almost exalts by comparison their rare and burlesque attempts at open rebellion into a pardonable crime. One of the best accounts that we have seen of the Fenian "invasion" of 1865 is given by a well-known and popular writer of fiction, ‡ and as the Queen's Own Rifles were concerned we will give his description of the "Battle of Ridgeway" in his own terms.

\* The Prince of Wales' Regiment have a red uniform with blue facings, and the motto "Nulli Secundus."

† The Queen's Own have a dark green uniform with scarlet facings. The badge and device are a maple leaf, on which a scroll or garter clasped with a buckle, and bearing the legend "Queen's Own Rifles," and the motto *In pace paratus*, encircling the figure 2 and surmounted by the Imperial Crown. The other ornaments—cross-belt, &c.—are a lion's head, a Maltese cross of black enamel having between the arms four lions (silver) passant guardant between two wreaths of maple leaves.

‡ Hawley Smart: "Sunshine and Snow."

“It seemed that after much speechifying and fierce denunciation of the Saxon for some two days in Buffalo, a body of Fenians, on the night of May 31st, had crossed the Niagara, and seized upon Fort Erie. As to what actual strength they were in, the Government were without information; but they did understand the importance of Fort Erie.

“‘Second edition! Fenian invasion of Canada! Great success! Capture of Fort Erie!’ sounded somewhat imposing, vociferated in Broadway, and made the New York world opine, that there really was a backbone to this much-talked-of conspiracy, but the Canadian Government were of course aware that Fort Erie was an abandoned stronghold of former times, and open to be taken possession of by any large-hearted conspirator, who was armed with a spade with which to clear his path through the thistles. Still the authorities were quite alive to the fact that Fenians, in numbers more or less, had made their appearance on Canadian soil; were requisitioning (military shibboleth for felonious confiscation of property) horses, provisions, and liquors, most especially liquors; that they were tearing up the rails, and had cut the telegraph wires in the direction of Chippewa. Further came rumours of their being in great force near St. Allans in Vermont; and they were reported to be five thousand strong opposite Montreal and Edwardsburg.”

Then came the tidings that they were marching on Chippewa. “Hot on their track followed Peacock (colonel of the 16th, and commander of the column). If he had no artillery, he was also quite aware that they had none; and though in some little uncertainty about their actual numbers, he had no reason to believe they were more than the force under his command was perfectly competent to deal with. And now occurred one of those curious incidents that so constantly take place in great wars. Marching with a breast-high scent on the road to Chippewa, hearing of the insurgents at every mile post, listening to jeremiads concerning the fate of Chippewa, as he got not there in time to prevent its being sacked, fired, or what not, Brigadier Peacock passes a bye-lane leading to the village of Ridgeway in the first instance, and to the bank of the River Niagara and Fort Erie in the second. It was up this bye-lane the Fenians, after landing, had originally come and struck into the Chippewa road. It was very pardonable never to suspect that the enemy, of whose doings you were continually hearing in your front, had suddenly lost heart, rapidly retreated, and turning down the very bye-lane from which he had emerged, was once more on his way to the river. At all events this idea never occurred to Colonel Peacock or any of his staff. They pushed forward as fast as they



could manage to do along the Chippewa road, leaving the rabble they had been sent to disperse quietly encamping themselves down that bye-lane on the ridge from which the village derives its name. There the Fenian army requisitioned itself, more especially in the matter of fluids, wont, like Sir John, to take much sack with two-penn'orth of bread, an idea somewhat prevalent amongst filibusters generally. Colonel Peacock, meanwhile, pushing rapidly forward on what he conceives to be the track of the rebels, bivouacs for the night about eight miles beyond that bye-lane, on the sides of the highway to Chippewa.

"The Queen's Own Volunteers from Toronto arrived in due time at Port Colborne, only to find that the regulars had left, and, of course, they pushed on in compliance with their orders, in pursuit of Brigadier Peacock, but before they reached this famous bye-lane, which plays so prominent a part in the history of the great Fenian invasion in Canada, they became aware that the enemy were occupying Ridgeway, and after some slight reflection, the colonel of the Toronto Volunteers resolved to attack them. . . . General O'Neil, of the Fenian army, may, or may not have been a great general. It is difficult to develop the qualities of a great commander when you command a Falstaffian army. He had at present seized Hoffman's Tavern, a position to which, if its name carried actual meaning, he could depend upon his followers staunchly clinging, as the key of his position, and thrown out his men in skirmishing order amidst the scrub that crowned Ridgeway Ridge, a position of some strength in many ways, more especially as both masking his numbers and the quality of his troops; a position, too, calculated to give some confidence to his ragamuffin battalions, inasmuch as the shooting at men who cannot see you is immeasurably more comforting than shooting at men who can.

"The volunteers speedily felt this; they were shooting at mere puffs of smoke in a thicket, but the denizens of the thicket, though making peculiarly bad practice, had, at all events, their foe in the open to fire upon. The colonel of the volunteers saw a few of his corps fall, and was totally ignorant of in what strength the enemy might be; further, he had no idea of where Colonel Peacock and his column were at this moment, and remembered that his orders had been to place himself under that officer's command. The Toronto riflemen, in short, were undergoing that baptism of fire most trying of all to the uninitiated; when the first few victims of the war Moloch plunge or stagger in their tracks, before the tumult of combat had commenced, before the madness of battle has quickened the pulses, and that they were a little unsteady in consequence may be easily conceived.

"At last, the chief of the volunteers, failing utterly to discover in what force the enemy might occupy the scrub in his front, seeing no signs of approaching reinforcements, and conscious that some score or more of his men had fallen in this futile attempt to feel the foe, reluctantly gave the order to retire. The volunteers, carrying off both their dead and wounded, retreated slowly and sullenly amidst the tumultuous and triumphant yells of the Fenians; and thus, after a sanguinary struggle of twenty minutes, ended the memorable battle of Ridgeway.

"General O'Neil, meanwhile, though flushed with a pardonable pride in his apparent victory, had his own anxieties. There had not been that influx of sturdy recruits to the green banner with its golden harp that he had anticipated; in short, he had been joined by nobody. The supporting bodies that were to follow him he could hear nothing of. He was quite aware that his force, though posted in the scrub, and liberally allowed with 'Bourbon,' had wavered considerably during the combat. He knew that had the volunteers made a determined rush at his position, never a man of his command had bided the result of it. He was aware, moreover, that a column of regulars was already in his vicinity, and let the strength of that column be comparatively small, yet it was tolerably sure to outnumber his ragamuffin army. Further prosecution of the great enterprise was impossible, all he could hope was to bring himself and his men safe off. And he therefore resolved to fall back once more on the Niagara."

It would be difficult to find any description of the battle which more faithfully describes the incidents that occurred. The next important service of the Queen's Own was in the North-West Rebellion. In this they were attached to the column under Colonel Otter, and were under the immediate command of Colonel Millar. A company of sixty under Captain Brown took part in the reconnaissance in force of 2nd May, 1885, and the regiment also supplied the ambulance service for that expedition. Colonel Otter describes their share in the proceedings as involving a participation in what proved one of the sharpest brushes of the day. "Lieutenant Brook, Q.O.R.," he writes in his report, "most pluckily led the party to clear our left rear, and Sergeant McKell, Privates Acheson and Lloyd of the same corps, distinguished themselves by assisting the wounded to places of safety in the face of heavy fire, Private Lloyd himself being wounded in this duty. The ambulance corps of the Queen's Own was particularly prominent in answering the numerous calls from the front for assistance, many times having to traverse ground that was raked by the enemy's fire. Surgeon Leslie, Q.O.R., rendered willing and valuable service to the injured. To my personal staff, including Captain Mutton,

Q.O.R., I owe many thanks for their boldness, promptness, and assiduity." Amongst the wounded were Colour-Sergeant Cooper, and Privates Varcy, Lloyd, Watts, and Fraser.

Subjoined is a list of the successes of the Queen's Own in the shooting competitions.

In 1881 Staff-Sergeant Walker gained the Gzowski Cup, and in the same year he gained the McDougall Cup and the Grand Aggregate Prize. In 1882 the McDougall Cup was gained by Sergeant Thompson, and in 1886 by Private Bartlett. The regiment gained in 1884 the Caron Cup, and in 1889 the Gzowski Cup. In 1886, Sergeant Kennedy gained the Governor-General's Medal, and in 1887 and 1889, Private Duncan gained the Governor-General's Prize and the Dominion of Canada Match. In 1889 Sergeant Crooks won the Ouimet Match.

The 3rd BATTALION "VICTORIA RIFLES \* OF CANADA," date from 1862, and gained their first laurels in the Fenian inroad of 1865.

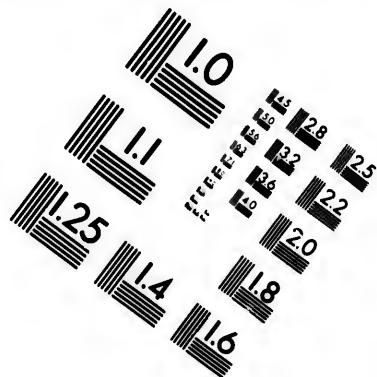
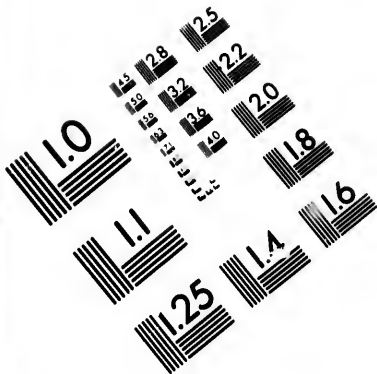
"Eccles Hill" which commemorates their services against the Fenians is well nigh forgotten now, but many can still remember the excitement which pervaded all ranks when "war's alarm" bid fair to become a dire reality. In an article which appeared a little after, commenting on the previous attempts, the writer went on to say:—

"But this year everything was different. The movement was not suspected forty-eight hours before the Fenian bayonets glistened in the Canada sun. Arms and supplies had been collected so gradually and so quietly that their existence was not known to any but the chosen few. The false alarm a few weeks before had so disgusted all parties, that, when the real wolf came, the cries of the watch were long unheeded. Hubbard's, the Fenian rendezvous and camp, is at the summit of a little rise in the road, about one mile from the line. It is a picturesque spot, with broad meadows stretching out on the south-east, and a rocky bluff overhanging it on the west. Underneath the tall trees, which stand like a line of sentinels on one side of the road, the Fenians stored their supplies and made their bivouac. It was at this point that all the munitions for the force had been collected during the week. With a view to guarding against the mistake of the first raid, when there were plenty of men but no guns, the Brotherhood had on the ground arms sufficient for five thousand men. This is General O'Neill's statement, and it was confirmed by appearances; for, at the time of the advance, some four hundred men had been armed, and but a small portion of the guns had been unpacked.

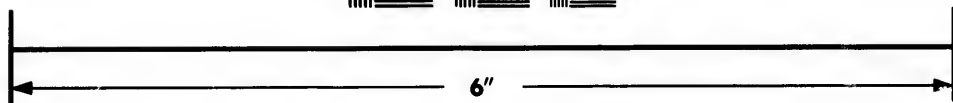
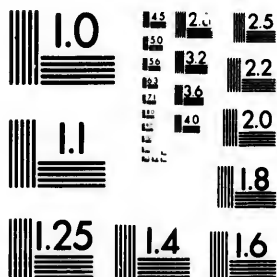
"The story of the engagement at Richards' Farm has been often told, and is familiar to all who care. On the part of the Fenians, it was a succession of disasters from begin-

\* The Victoria Rifles have a green uniform with scarlet facings, and the distinction of "Eccles Hill."





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503



ning to end; and imbecility and cowardice produced a complete failure. Each new movement seemed to complicate the difficulties of the situation. A company of skirmishers in close order and with fixed bayonets, ran down the hill, received the fire of the enemy, and then ran back up the hill. They took shelter at the inhospitable house of Mr. Alvah Richards. The rest of the army ran up into the woods, and got behind trees. Here they received volleys from the Canadians and a speech from O'Neill.

"Across the line, on Eccles Hill, lay seventy-five Canadians, pointing their remorseless Snider or Spencer rifles at every uncovered spot, and sending a shower of bullets at any head that showed itself in range. From noon till dark, the Dominion riflemen preserved their restless vigil while the Fenians kept the shelter of Richards', unable even to retreat. Anon the word would come, that the Canadians were advancing upon the house; and terrified Irishmen would huddle together, and with pale faces count the minutes they had to live. Then Donnelly would storm at them for their cowardice, order them out into the angle behind the house, form them in military order, and await the onset of the enemy. But the onset never came; for the Canadians were careful to violate no law, and kept strictly on their own soil." We make no apology for thus quoting in full one—and that of the best—of the few accounts which are accessible of this exploit. The "Distinction," one of the few borne by the Canadian Regiments, shows the share the Victorias had in the affair.

The vacant position of 4th Battalion used to be occupied by a regiment called the "Chasseurs Canadiens" of Montreal, which, however, has for some years ceased to exist. According to Christie the "Canadian Chasseurs" were embodied in September, 1812, and were amongst the forces at the head of which the gallant Sir George Prevost set himself to defend the frontier. In mentioning here this regiment which has ceased to exist we may be allowed to refer to the fact to which the Canadian Chasseurs amongst other corps so emphatically testified, namely, the genuine and selfless loyalty displayed by the French portion of the community. It must be remembered that scarcely yet was even England free from the memories of the jealous suspicion entertained towards the Roman Catholic subjects of the British crown.

"The evil that men do lives after them;  
The good is oft interred with their bones."

The splendid service rendered to Queen and country by the Roman Catholics at the time of the Armada had been forgotten; all that was thought of was their unpopular activity under the Stuarts, and the stubborn loyalty with which they clung to the

Royal line which had forfeited the Crown. Scarcely twenty years before the formation of the Canadian Chasseurs Edmund Burke had addressed an English constituency in the following eloquent words:—"When the English nation seemed to be dangerously if not irrevocably divided—when one, and that the most growing branch, was torn from the parent stock and engrafted on the power of France, a great terror fell upon this kingdom. . . . You remember the cloud that gloomed over us all. In that hour of our dismay, from the bottom of the hiding-places into which the indiscriminate rigour of our statutes had driven them, came out the body of the Roman Catholics. They appeared before the steps of a tottering throne with one of the most sober, measured, steady, and dutiful addresses that was ever presented to the Crown. . . . The address showed that all subjects of England had cast off all foreign views and connections, and that every man looked for his relief from every grievance at the hands only of his own national government." Such was the principle which actuated the inhabitants of Montreal and its district in the troublous times of 1812, and the Canadian Chasseurs and other regiments which then sprang into being proved at once their loyalty and their valour in many a well-fought field.

Their subsequent career has been comparatively uneventful, though they have a good record to show in marksmanship. The Governor-General's Medal was gained in 1876 and 1882 by Lieutenant Wolfenden; in 1877 by Sergeant Fletcher, and in 1883 and 1886 by Colour-Sergeant Woolcot. The year 1889 was a red letter year in their chronicles. The British Challenge Shield was won by the regiment, Private Burns gained the Governor-General's Prize and the Manufacturers' Prize, while the Lansdowne Aggregate was secured by Staff-Sergeant McAdam.

The 5th BATTALION ROYAL SCOTS OF CANADA\* date from 1872, and were formerly known as the "Royal Light Infantry." They served in General Weatherell's Force, and distinguished themselves at the capture of St. Eustache. They did not take any share in the North-West Expedition. Their successes at the butts are as follows:—

In 1886 Staff-Sergeant Wynne and Private Smith gained the Governor General's Medal, and in 1887 Lieutenant Vaughan gained the McDougall cup. In 1888 Captain Hood gained the Governor-General's Medal, and in 1888 and 1889 the regiment gained the Gzowski Cup.

\* The Royal Scots wear Highland uniform, and have as a badge "A bear's head with the motto *Ne Obliviscaris* in the Garter under it."



The 6th BATTALION FUSILIERS\* date from 1862, and were represented in the Fenian Raid to which reference has been before made. The present Surgeon, Dr. Bell, served in the North-West Campaign in the Field Hospital, No. 1. Amongst their achievements on the shooting range may be mentioned that of Private Marks, who in three years, 1881, 1885, and 1887, gained the Governor-General's Medal; of Private Riddle who gained the same prize in 1882 and 1884, and of Colour-Sergeant Waters who won it in 1885. In 1883 and 1889, the 6th gained the British Challenge Shield and the Minister of Militia's Challenge Cup.

The 7th BATTALION FUSILIERS† date from 1866, and used to be called the "London Light Infantry." In 1889 the battalion was reorganized. In the North-West Rebellion they were commanded by Colonel W. de R. Williams, and were chiefly employed at Clarke's Crossing. There were no casualties.

The 8th BATTALION ROYAL RIFLES date from 1862. By a General Order of October, 1883, they were granted as "badge and motto:—A lion's head and whistle to be connected with three chains, all in silver, a centre ornament on a polished silver plate between two wreaths of laurel leaves of frosted silver, conjoined at the base, including a Maltese cross of frosted silver, between the arms of the cross four *lioneels, passant gardant*; charged upon the centre of the cross a plate of frosted silver inscribed with the number of the battalion in Roman letters, VIII., surrounded with a border also of frosted silver inscribed with the words 'Royal Rifles'; on a silver scroll charged on the base of this centre ornament, where the wreaths are joined, and inscribed with the regimental motto, *Volens et Valens*. Over all the Imperial Crown in silver resting upon a supportive tablet of the same. The pouch belt ornaments of sergeants to be of similar form, but of bronze instead of silver."

Though the battalion was not engaged in the North-West Rebellion the present senior major, Major Prower, served in the "B" Battery of Canadian Artillery.

The battalion has had several successes in shooting competitions. In 1874 and 1883 Lieutenant Balfour gained the Governor-General's Medal, and in 1880 the Governor-

\* The 6th Fusiliers have a red uniform with blue facings. The official description of the badge is as follows:—  
Quarterly: First, *or*, a Beaver proper on a mount, *vert*. Second, *gules*, a Lion *passant, or*. Third, *azure*, a Grenade, *argent*, embellished *or*. Fourth, *argent*, a sprig of three maple leaves proper. The whole within a garter, *azure*, buckled and fimbriated *or*.

Crest: An Indian warrior proper, holding a bow in his dexter hand, and having a quiver of arrows over the sinister shoulder.

Motto: "*Vestigia nulla retrorsum.*"

† The 7th Fusiliers have a scarlet uniform with blue facings.

General's Prize, in 1880 and 1883 Captain Philips and Lieutenant Forrest gained respectively the Governor-General's Medal and the Grand Aggregate Prize. The regiment in 1886 gained the British Challenge Shield; in 1887 and 1889 the Gzowski Cup.

The 9th BATTALION (VOLTIGEURS DE QUEBEC) date from March, 1862. Under Colonel Amyot they were called out at the time of the North-West Rebellion, being stationed chiefly at Calgary and Gleichen. Lieutenant Pelletier of the regiment was attached to the "B" battery, R.C.A., and fought at Cut Knife Hill, where, to quote the language of the commanding officer's report, "he was wounded early in the action, while gallantly encouraging his men in the face of a hot fire." Amongst the marksmen of the regiment may be mentioned Private May, who in 1868 gained the McDougall Cup.

The 10th BATTALION ROYAL GRENADIERS,\* date from 1862, and may be considered as one of the finest regiments in the Dominion. The present commanding officer, Colonel Dawson, one of the extra aide-de-camps to the Governor-General, saw service at the time of the Fenian Raid, and was second in command of the regiment during the suppression of the North-West Rebellion. In this war the Grenadiers gained deserved praise. Almost immediately on their arrival at Qu'Appelle they were ordered to the front, "with teams to hasten their march and save the men." At Fish Creek they were in the column under Colonel Montizambert, and arrived on the scene somewhat late, relieving the Winnipeg Rifles in their arduous position. To the Grenadiers fell the honour of actually commencing the fighting about Batoche. Two companies advanced into the bush and were received by a heavy fire from the concealed rifle pits of the enemy. Moor was killed, and Captain Mason, in command of No. 2 Company, wounded. During the operations preliminary to the final attack Captain Manley was wounded. When that attack was made, "Colonel Garrett advanced his regiment straight to the front," a movement which was completed under a brisk fire from the front as well as the opposite side of the river. Steadily yet rapidly they advanced, with the enemy's bullets pouring in amongst the ranks, though fortunately with less fatal effect than might have been anticipated. With a cheer the Grenadiers and Midlanders dashed forward, "and drove the enemy out of the forts in front of the cemetery and the ravine to the right of it." Successful though the movement was, the general satisfaction was chequered by the

\* By G. O. of August, 1879, the Royal Grenadiers were granted as a badge:—"In centre on shield, figure 10 with crown on top; behind both and showing above crown and 10, a sheaf of spears; on dexter side thistle and shamrock; on sinister side roses, and in base maple leaves. The shield surrounded with garter, bearing the motto *Ready, Aye, Ready*, which is surrounded by a wreath of laurel leaves, behind which, and extending outside wreath, a military star. The whole surmounted by a Royal Crown. The 10th also have the distinction, 'Batoche.'

death of Lieutenant Fitch, "a most promising young officer." Batocho was won, and the Grenadiers had right well earned their distinction. Amongst the wounded, in addition to those mentioned, were Major Dawson,\* Staff-Sergeant Mitchell, Corporal Foley, Privates Brisbane, Eager, Millsom, Martin, Marshall, Barber, Cantwell, Quigley, Cook, Stead, Scovell, and Bugler Gaghan. Some fifty of the regiment were with the force which General Middleton took in pursuit of Big Bear, Major Dawson being left in command at Battleford. As a short summary of the achievements of the Grenadiers at the butts we may mention that in 1873 Sergeant McMullen gained the Governor-General's Prize and Medal, and in 1875 Captain Anderson gained the Governor-General's Medal. In 1878 and 1879 respectively Private Bell gained the Grand Aggregate Prize and the Governor-General's Medal. In 1880 and 1888 Sergeant T. Mitchell gained the Grand Aggregate Prize, and in 1887 he gained the Governor-General's Medal. In 1883 and 1889 the regiment gained the Gzowski Cup and the British Challenge Shield, and in 1889 the Ouimet Match, the Governor-General's Prize, and the Martini Matches were gained by Private Simpson. In the same year Sergeant T. Mitchell gained the London Merchants' Cup, the Governor-General's Prize, and the Martini Matches.

The 11th BATTALION OF INFANTRY, the ARGENTEUIL RANGERS † date from March, 1862. The Battalion has not been engaged in any of the more recent occasions when the Militia has been called out.

The 12th BATTALION OF INFANTRY, YORK RANGERS ‡ date from 1866. At the time of the North-West Rebellion four companies of the 12th and four companies of the 35th—the Simcoe Foresters—were formed by Colonel O'Brien of the latter regiment into a battalion called the York and Simcoe Rangers. Their first station was at Fort Qu'Appelle, after which they went on to Humboldt, and they did not participate in the more active operations. Their achievements in the shooting-field may be thus summarised.

In 1884, Sergeant Bell gained the Governor-General's Medal, and in 1889 the London Merchants' Cup. In 1888 Lieutenant Brown gained the McDougall Cup, and in 1889 the regiment gained the British Challenge Shield, and in 1885 the Gzowski Cup.

The 13th BATTALION OF INFANTRY date from 1862, the 14th (THE PRINCESS OF WALES'

\* Major Dawson was particularly mentioned in the General's report.

† The uniform is red with blue facings. As a badge the 11th bear a military star with the numeral 11, and the full title of the regiment. Round the whole is a wreath of maple leaves surmounted by the Imperial Crown, underneath being the motto "No Surrender."

‡ The York Rangers have as a motto *Celer et audax*.

OWN RIFLES), and the 15th (THE ARGYLE LIGHT INFANTRY),\* from January, 1863. The 13th Battalion rendered good service at the time of the Fenian incursion, and the 15th was one of the regiments which contributed to form the "Midland Battalion" on the occasion of the recent rebellion in the North-West, in which Colonel Smith, now of the 14th, also took part. The part the Midland Battalion under its gallant commander, Colonel Williams of the 46th, played in the various engagements which terminated in the collapse of Riel's rebellion is well known. Grenadiers, Midlanders, and the 90th vied with each other as to which should earn the greatest credit, and it would be hard to say to whom the palm should be accorded. Amongst the officers of the 15th who were present we may mention Major Cazier, Captain Halliwell, and Lieutenant Kenny, of whom the second named was wounded in the left shoulder during the attack on Batoche.

Although the 13th Regiment has not taken part in the more recent fighting work of the army, few regiments can show a better record of good shooting.

In 1873 and 1875 Sergeant D. Mitchell gained the McDougall Cup, and in 1875 and 1876 he gained the Grand Aggregate Prize, and in 1880 he gained the Governor-General's Medal, gaining again in 1889 the Manufacturers' Match. In 1876 Private T. Mitchell gained the McDougall Cup, and in 1879 Private W. Mitchell gained the Governor-General's Medal. In 1886 and 1889 Captain Zealand gained respectively the Governor-General's Medal and Prize. In 1889 Lieutenant Margetts and Private Murdock gained the Revolver Match, and in the same year Sergeant Goodwin gained the Manufacturers' Match, the Snider Aggregate, and the Lansdowne Aggregate. In the same year the Bankers' Prize (Grand Aggregate) and the Standing Match was gained by Captain Ross. In 1885 the regiment gained the British Challenge Shield, and in 1889 Corporal Morris gained the Dominion of Canada Match, the Snider Aggregate, the Ouimet Match, the Lansdowne Aggregate, the London Merchants' Cup, and the Governor-General's Prize. In 1882 he also gained the Governor-General's medal. The 14th (Princess of Wales' Own Rifles) won the Rideau Medal in 1889.

The 16th (PRINCE EDWARD) BATTALION OF INFANTRY, the 17th (LEVIS) BATTALION, and

\* The Argyle Light Infantry bear as device and motto :—The Garter, surmounted by a crown, and inscribed thereon "Argyle Light Infantry," within the Garter the numeral XV, surmounted by a boar's head. The Garter is surmounted by a wreath of maple leaves supported by the colours of the Battalion, and underneath the motto, *Nulli Secundus*.

Where the uniform is not specially described, the ordinary description before given applies, *i.e.* scarlet with blue facings, or, in the case of Rifle Regiments, dark green with scarlet.

the 18th (PRESCOTT) \* BATTALION, all date from February, 1863, being organized within a few days of each other. The 16th was represented at the Fenian outbreak.

The 19th (LINCOLN) BATTALION, and the 20th (HALLON) BATTALION (Lorne Rifles) both date from September 8th, 1866. Though in recent years neither regiment has taken an active part in the better-known achievements of the Canadian army, the "Lincoln" can at least boast the possession of a name which their predecessors of 1812 made a famous one. There were five "Lincoln" regiments amongst the British forces at Queenston Heights, and from the many names of those who there upheld the honour of their cause may be mentioned Crook and M'Ewan of the 1st Lincoln, Hamilton and Stone of the 2nd, Nellies and W. Crook of the 4th, Hall, Durand, and Applegate of the 5th. Side by side with the York volunteers, "with 'Brock' on their lips and revenge in their hearts," charged the men of Lincoln in that furious onset which gained the day for Canada. Amongst the "foremost in frontier fray" from the very commencement of the war had been Thomas Clark, Lieutenant-Colonel of the 2nd Militia. He it was who, on the 4th July, 1813, the anniversary of the American independence, embarked with forty of his regiment, crossed the river and captured a fort, considerable munition of war, and fifteen prisoners. A week later the same number of men under Clark accompanied Colonel Bishopp's force in his brilliant attack upon Black Rock Fort. But we need not linger longer upon the deeds of the Lincoln regiments of old. Should occasion arise, doubtless, their successors of to-day would quit themselves as well and manfully as did the heroes of 1812.

The 21st BATTALION (ESSEX) FUSILIERS, and the 22nd BATTALION (OXFORD) RIFLES, † date, the former from June, 1885, and the latter from August, 1863. Both regiments were represented during the Fenian raid, many of the members rendering good service.

The 23rd (BEAUCE) BATTALION date from April 1869, the 24th (KENT), the 25th (ELGIN), the 26th (MIDDLESEX), the 27th (LAMBTON) "St. Clair Borderers," ‡ the 28th (PERTH), the 29th (WATERLOO), the 30th (WELLINGTON), the 31st (GREY), the 32nd (BRUCE), the 33rd (HURON), and the 34th (ONTARIO), all date from the 14th of September, 1866, and have not had the opportunity of engaging in active service. Many of the senior officers, Colonel Martin and Major Denhardt of the 24th, Colonel Lindley and Major Bradley of

\* The 18th have as a motto *Paratus et Volens*.

† The Oxford Rifles have as badge and motto:—A Maltese Cross having at each of its angles a British Lion, and in the centre the numerals 22, encircled by the additional designation of the Battalion, "The Oxford Rifles." The whole encircled by a wreath of maple leaves surmounted by the Imperial crown, with the motto, *Pro aris et focis*, on the wreath, at base of badge.

‡ The St. Clair Borderers have as a motto, *Semper Paratus et Fidelis*.

the 25th, Major Hamilton of the 28th, Colonels Clarke, Brodie, and Coleman of the 30th, 31st and 33rd respectively, served on the occasion of the Fenian disturbance. Captain Cook of the 28th served with the Militia in the Red River Expedition, and Lieutenant Grierson served in the Q.O.R. in the North-West Rebellion. The Governor-General's Medal has been won by Private Henderson of the 25th (1881), by Lieutenant Conboy of the 30th (1888), by Lieutenant Mitchell of the 32nd (1881), by Captain Wilson and Colour-Sergeant Muirs of the 33rd in 1881 and 1882 respectively; while Lieutenant Mitchell also gained in 1883 the Governor-General's Prize, and in 1889 the Standing Match Competition; Captain Wilson, before-named, gained the Governor General's Prize in 1881, and in 1888 the Huron Battalion won the Caron Cup.

The 35th BATTALION OF INFANTRY, THE SIMCOE FORESTERS\* also date from September, 1866, and, as has been observed, contributed four companies to the constitution of the York and Simcoe Rangers on the occasion of the North-West Rebellion. They were also represented in the suppression of the Fenian disturbances. In 1885, the present commanding officer, Colonel O'Brien, was in command of the composite battalion, Major Ward acted as adjutant, and many of the other officers were in command of companies.

The 36th (PEEL) BATTALION OF INFANTRY † date from the same date, September, 1866, and have been represented by existing members of the regiment both in the Fenian and North-West disturbances. The 37th (HALDIMAND) BATTALION OF RIFLES, the 38th BATTALION (DUFFERIN) RIFLES OF CANADA, ‡ and the 39th (NORFOLK) BATTALION OF RIFLES § all date from the 28th of September, 1866. The 37th and 38th have not been

\* The Simcoe Foresters have as a motto *Spectemur Agendo*.

† The Peel Battalion has a motto *Pro aris et focis*.

‡ The Dufferin Rifles bear the following which we give in the words of the General Order:—

“Badge &c. The Badge and Device of the Battalion shall consist of the Earl of Dufferin's crest (comprising a cap of maintenance surmounted by a crescent), underneath which are the numerals 38, the whole encircled by a scroll or garter, clasped with a buckle and bearing the legend ‘Dufferin Rifles’ and his lordship's motto, *Per vias rectas*, the whole surmounted by the Imperial Crown. The badge shall be of silver for officers and bronze for non-commissioned officers and men.

“Cross belt ornaments.—A lion's head, chain, and whistle in silver with a centre ornament on a polished silver plate between two wreaths of maple leaves of frosted silver conjoined at the base, encircling a Maltese cross of frosted silver, fimbriated with polished silver—between the arms of the cross four lions passant guardant—charged upon the cross a plate of frosted silver inscribed with the numeral 38, surrounded with a border also of frosted silver, inscribed with the words ‘Dufferin Rifles.’ Over all the Imperial Crown in silver resting upon a supporting tablet of the same. A centre ornament of silver on pouch at back of belt consisting of the numerals 38, surrounded by a bugle, the whole surmounted by the Imperial Crown.”

§ The Norfolk Rifles bear as badge:—A Maltese Cross surmounted by the Imperial Crown, at each angle of the cross a British lion. In the centre of the cross the numeral 39, encircled by the regimental designation, “Norfolk Rifles, Canada.”

Badge for cross belt, to be a Maltese Cross as above described, encircled by a wreath of maple leaves surmounted by the Imperial Crown. Badges to be silver for officers, bronze for non-commissioned officers and men.

actively employed on either of the occasions which since their formation have called for the services of the Militia, though some of the officers of the latter served in the North-West Campaign. Colonel Coombs, Major Ryerson, and Captain Price of the Norfolk Rifles served against the Fenians.

The 40th (NORTHUMBERLAND) BATTALION OF INFANTRY date from October, 1866, and were one of the regiments which contributed a company to the formation of the Midland Battalion in 1885, Captain Bonnycastle of the Campbellford Company being then in command of the "B" Company of the battalion.

The 41st (BROCKVILLE) BATTALION OF RIFLES\* and the 42nd (BROCKVILLE) BATTALION OF INFANTRY both date from October, 1866. The present commanding officers of both regiments, Lieutenant-Colonel Cole and Lieutenant-Colonel Matheson, saw good service at the time of the Fenian outbreak.

The 43rd (OTTAWA AND CARLETON) BATTALION OF RIFLES† date from August 1881. Many of the present officers, including Major Wright,‡ Captains Billings, Bell, and Rogers, and Lieutenant Lawless served in the 1885 expedition, while two of the officers, Captain Macdonald and Lieutenant Humphreys, had "been out" against the Fenians. The 43rd have, moreover, to boast other more peaceful exploits at the butts.

In 1883 Lieutenant Chamberlain gained the Mc'Dougall Cup, and in 1887 and 1889 the regiment gained respectively the Caron Cup and the Gzowski Cup. In 1889, Captain Rogers gained the Manufacturers' Match, Colour-Sergeant Boville gaining in the same year the Standing Match. In the same year Lieutenant-Colonel Anderson gained the Lansdowne Aggregate, Lieutenant Jamieson the Martini Matches, Colour-Sergeant Fairburn and Major Sherwood the Revolver Match, and Private Hutcheson the Snider Aggregate, the Bankers' Prize, Grand Aggregate, and the London Merchants' Cup.

The 44th (WELLAND) BATTALION OF INFANTRY § date from November, 1866, and were represented in the Fenian affair.

\* The Brockville Rifles bear as badge and motto.—A Maltese Cross surmounted by a Crown. In the centre the Battalion numeral, 41, crossed rifles above, a beaver below. Under the Beaver the motto, *Semper Paratus*. The whole surrounded by a wreath of maple leaves, outside of which are the words, "Brockville Battalion of Rifles."

† By General Orders the Ornaments and Devices of the Ottawa and Carleton Rifles are, cross-belt a Lion's head, chain, and whistle. The centre ornament to consist of a Maltese Cross having in each of its angles a Lion, in centre the regimental motto "Advance" in a double circle round the numeral 43, the whole encircled by a wreath of maple leaves surmounted by a royal crown, with the words "Ottawa and Carleton Rifles" on a scroll at foot.

Badge for forage cap.—The Maltese Cross forming the centre ornament of the cross belt.

Ornament for Pouch.—A bugle suspended by a knotted ribbon with cord and tassels. The ornaments with devices in silver for officers, bronze for non-commissioned officers and men.

‡ Major Wright served as commissariat officer to General Strange's column.

§ The 44th have as a motto *Mors aut Victoria*.

The 45th (WEST DURHAM) BATTALION OF INFANTRY were organized on the same date and were one of the regiments contributing the Midland Battalion, Major Deacon being attached to the staff, and Major Hughes commanding the "C" Company, the latter being specially commended in the General's report.

Amongst their shooting successes the 45th record that in 1884, Staff-Sergeant Russell gained the Grand Aggregate Prize, and in 1887 the Governor-General's Medal. In 1885 Sergeant King gained the Grand Aggregate Prize, and in 1889 Private Curtis gained the Martini Matches, Private Windatt the Bankers' Prize, and Sergeant Horsey the same.

The 46th (EAST DURHAM) BATTALION OF INFANTRY\* also date from November, 1866, and were represented in the Fenian disturbance. They were, so to speak, the parent regiment of the Midland Battalion, contributing two companies to its composition. Major Dingwall commanded the "E" Company, Captain Winslow, the "D" Company, Captain Preston being second in command, Quartermaster Clemmes who, like Major Dingwall, was one of the "veterans" of the Fenian outbreak, was Quartermaster to the battalion; Lieutenant Smart served under Major Dingwall, and Dr. Wight was also present.

The 47th (FRONTENAC) BATTALION OF INFANTRY have the same date of official origin, and was another of the constituent regiments of the Midland Battalion, Captain Kelly being in command of the "F" Company. Sergeant Baillie gained the Governor-General's Medal in 1873, and in 1889 was the victor in the Manufacturers' Match.

The 49th (HASTINGS) BATTALION OF RIFLES date from the same period. They are amongst the regiments which claim a participation in the suppression of the Fenian outbreak, no fewer than four of the present officers having then served. The Hastings contributed a company to the Midland Battalion, Captain Harrison being in command of the "H" Company, to which Captain Smith was also attached. Dr. Tracey of the regiment was one of the surgeons of Field Hospital No 1. The Governor-General's Medal and the Grand Aggregate Prize have been gained respectively by Sergeant Bennett in 1874, and Private Kimmorly in 1884.

The 50th BATTALION OF INFANTRY (HUNTINGDON BORDERERS)† date from 1866. The distinction "Trout River" borne by them, recalls an episode in the ill-known Fenian

\* The 46th have as a motto *Semper Paratus*.

† By General Order of May, 1871, the Huntingdon Borderers have "On battalion colour the words 'Trout River.' Device and motto, the Garter, surmounted by a crown, on which is inscribed the words 'Huntingdon Borderers.' Within the Garter the numeral of the battalion (L) in Roman letter. The Garter surrounded by a wreath of Maple leaves, and underneath the motto *Nec aspera terrent* inscribed on a scroll. In three corners of the colour a maple leaf."



invasion of 1870. To a certain extent in some cases, the world in general reverses the role of *laudator temporis acti*, and comes at last to take *omne ignotum pro infinitissimo*. But at the time the alarm was genuine and well-founded enough. It was well remarked in an account which appeared a short time after that "Montreal awoke one morning to hear its newsboys shouting themselves hoarse over 'specials' and 'extras,' and to see its volunteers hurrying in many directions to do battle against the invaders."\* The frontier stations south of Montreal were threatened, and popular excitement was kept at fever heat by telegrams following in quick succession. The article to which we have referred gives a summary of these which we will quote.

No. 1. Potsdam Junction.—Two companies, cavalry; three car-loads of men arrived here from Rome on 26th. No fight before Saturday.

No. 2. Malone, 26th May.—All quiet, one hundred and fifty Fenians arrived, they leave for Trout River.

No. 3. South Hinchinbrook.—Operator just said good-bye; Fenians close at hand.

No. 4. Huntingdon, 26th May.—Fenians got large reinforcements last night, six field pieces; provisions plenty; expect to fight to-morrow.

No. 5. Hinchinbrook.—Seven hundred well-armed Fenians at hand.

No. 6. Potsdam Junction.—Just returned from Fenian camp. Two hundred in all; fifty deserters during night; they have one hundred and fifty waggon loads of ammunition, &c., arms computed at eight thousand stand, rifles, chiefly Springfield, converted, five hundred Sniders, six brass guns, very light; all on way to St. Regis and Fort Covington; no provisions; two hundred more arrive at noon.

No. 7. Waterdown.—Two hundred Fenians, under General Gleeson, and five hundred United States soldiers passed here for frontier.

No. 8. Huntingdon, 26th May.—One operator at South Hinchinbrook has come to office, and reports Fenians have seized office there, and are advancing on Huntingdon.

At Huntingdon the Canadian Militia had concentrated to the number of some three regiments, and it became evident that the invaders meant fighting. The scene was one of excitement, characterised on the part of the Canadians by an instinctive prescience of success. Yet to all appearance success might well be for their foes, whose strength had been variously estimated, and whose latent resources, bearing in mind the country from which they came, were a problem not easy of solution. Before long "the head of the hostile column came moving up the road from Huntingdon at a long swinging pace.

\* "St. James's Magazine," New Series, vol. 9.

When it reached Winchinbrook its leading companies were turned to the right to gain the line of woods . . . skirted the cultivated ground—the main body of the advance was pushed up along the road directly towards the hop-gardens, from which a bend in the road still concealed them. Behind this advanced line, which was deployed into skirmishing order, came a company of the 69th Regiment, and farther off followed that regiment, while the Montreal Garrison Artillery crossed the river near Winchinbrook and moved down to threaten the Fenian position upon its right flank.

“Behind it the ground was covered with the débris of the fleeing force. Swords, scabbards, Springfield breechloading rifles, black leather cartridge pouches, grey canvas knapsacks, pieces of pork, unscabbarded bayonets, waist belts engraved with ‘Irish Republican Army’; everything in fact, except the soldiers themselves. We soon reached the boundary-line. The bugles had been braying out ‘cease fire’ for some seconds before they were obeyed, the boys evidently thinking this opportunity of driving Snider bullets at the rate of five per minute from each rifle, across the line into Uncle Sam’s territory was an event not likely to occur soon again, and one which should, therefore, be made the most of. Accordingly it was some little time before Trout River could with any degree of safety to itself look out of doors, but by-and-bye the bugles, backed by repeated injunctions to cease fire, made themselves clearly understood, and the Borderers, dropping their Snider butts on the ground, sent a ringing cheer after their discomfited foes, whose precipitous retreat had carried them far behind the village houses.” Such is an account—and a fair one—of the engagement in which the Huntingdon Borderers earned their distinction of Trout River.

The 51st BATTALION OF INFANTRY, the HEMMINGFORD RANGERS, and the 52nd BATTALION, the BROME BATTALION OF LIGHT INFANTRY, both date from September, 1886. Colonel Hall, the commanding officer of the latter, is one of the comparatively few Canadian officers who can claim to have served in the rebellion of 1837 as well as the subsequent Fenian outburst. In the list of prizes won at the butts the 51st record that in 1884 the McDougall Prize was won by Corporal McNaughton.

The 53rd (SHERBROOKE) BATTALION,\* and the 54th (RICHMOND) BATTALION;† both date from March, 1867. In 1888 Lieutenant Spearing of the 53rd gained the Governor-

\* The Sherbrooke’s device and motto:—The Battalion numeral, LIII, in Roman characters, surrounded by a circle inscribed with the word “Sherbrooke.” The whole enclosed by a wreath of roses, shamrocks, thistles and maple leaves, surmounted by a Royal Crown; underneath a beaver; above a scroll bearing the motto *La hoc signo vinces*.

† The 54th bear as badge:—Shield *argent*, bearing a cross *sable*, with figures 54 in centre, between four Cornish choughs *proper*; surrounded by a ducal coronet, or a chough rising *proper*.

Motto:—*Steady*. The whole surrounded by a wreath of maple leaves with beaver.

General's Medal, and in the following year tied with Sergeant Clark for the first place in the competition for the Minister of Militia's Prize. In 1875 Major Thomas of the Richmonds gained the McDougall Cup, and in 1889 the Minister of Militia's Match and the Lansdowne Aggregate. In 1876 Captain Boyd gained the Governor-General's Medal.

The 55th (MEGANTIC) LIGHT INFANTRY\* date from March, 1867, and the 56th (GRENVILLE) BATTALION, "Lisgar Rifles," from April in the same year. Neither battalion was called upon for active service in the North-West Rebellion. In 1889 Lieutenant Bedford of the Lisgar Rifles gained the McDougall Prize.

The 57th BATTALION OF INFANTRY, "PETERBOROUGH RANGERS,"† date from May, 1867, and were one of the regiments called upon to contribute to the Midland Battalion, Captain Brennan being second in command of the "G" Company.

The 58th (COMPTON) BATTALION OF INFANTRY date from October, 1867, the 59th (STORMONT AND GLENGARRY) BATTALION‡ from July, 1868, the 60th (MISSISQUIOI)§ from February, 1879. The title "Glengarry" recalls—as is the case with many of the present regiments—the corps of the same name which gained considerable prestige in the campaign of 1812-14. The Glengarry Light Infantry and the Cornwall and Glengarry Militia formed the bulk of the small force which, in November, 1812, crossed the St. Lawrence and captured the Salmon River Fort. Their origin and subsequent gallantry under Colonel Macdonnell have been before referred to.|| We have before referred to the short campaign of which "Eccles Hill" was the principal encounter, and the part taken by the Missisquoi Battalion will be well remembered by all familiar with the details of the struggle. Amongst those of the officers who took part in the action

\* The "Megantic Light Infantry" bear as device and motto:—the garter surmounted by a crown, on which the word Megantic is inscribed. Within the garter the numeral (LV.) of the Battalion in Roman letters. The garter is surrounded by a wreath of maple leaves and supported by the regimental colours, and, underneath, the motto *Semper Paratus* inscribed on a scroll.

† The "Peterborough Rangers" bear as device and motto:—A beaver, under which are the numerals LVII. encircled by a scroll or garter clasped by a buckle, and bearing the designation "Peterborough Rangers," the whole surrounded by a wreath of maple leaves entwined with the rose, the thistle and the shamrock, and surmounted by the Imperial Crown. Underneath all, the motto *Quis Separabit*.

‡ The "Stormont and Glengarry" Battalion of Infantry bear as devices and motto on the Regimental Colour:—In the first corner, the crown and beaver, with the motto *Quis Separabit*; in the second corner, two axes, crossed; in the third corner, a ship; and in the fourth corner, a sheaf of grain surrounded by maple leaves. Principal motto: *Foy pour devoir*.

§ The "Missisquoi" Battalion of Infantry bear their badge and motto in accordance with a G.O. of August, 1879, which ran as follows:—"In recognition of the services rendered by a detachment of the 60th Battalion on the 25th May last, the Battalion is hereby permitted to bear on its regimental colour the words 'Eccles Hill,' with the motto *Watch the Front—Watch well*."

|| *Supra*, pp. 202-204.

and are still attached to the regiment may be mentioned Major Hanley and Lieutenant Westover. Lieutenant Whitman has gained the Governor-General's Prize and Medal and the McDougall Cup, the Medal having also been gained in 1887 by Private Stanton.

The 61st (MONTMAGNY AND L'ISLET) BATTALION OF INFANTRY date from 1869, and the 62nd BATTALION (ST. JOHN FUSILIERS),\* from March, 1872. The latter regiment was represented at the Fenian incursion, and one, at least, of the officers took part in the expedition of 1885. The Governor-General's Medal has been gained by Lieutenant Shives (1879), Captain Hartt (1883), Lieutenant Lordly and Lieutenant Manning (1889). Lieutenant Lordly gained, besides, the Bankers' Prize in 1889, Captain Thompson being the winner of the Dominion of Canada Match in the same year.

The 63rd HALIFAX BATTALION OF RIFLES † date from May, 1860, and claim to be in point of seniority the third oldest regiment in the Dominion. We have been compelled in most cases to pass over the early history of regiments; we will therefore take the Halifax Battalion as a typical one, and trace its growth *ab initio*. In so doing we shall give a fair idea of the processes through which other regiments have reached their present stage of organization.

The origin of the present force dates back, according to the historian of the battalion, ‡ to that general expectation of a great European War which, combined with the ominous existence of the immense Continental armies, was the cause of the organization of the Volunteer Forces in Great Britain. The warlike spirit then engendered soon spread to the dependencies of Great Britain, and was taken up in a practical manner in Nova Scotia. Meetings were held in the city of Halifax during the fall of 1859, and it was evident that the material for military organization was not confined to the old country. Many companies, including the Victoria Rifles, whose ranks were restricted to coloured citizens, were formed in Halifax, but those which are now represented by the existing battalion were the Scottish Rifles, the Chebucto Greys, Mayflower Rifles, Halifax Rifles, Irish Volunteers, and Dartmouth Rifles.

\* The St. John Fusiliers have as badge and motto:—Two Moose *rampant, affrontee*, supporting a garter clasped with a buckle, whereupon is inscribed "Saint John Fusiliers," surmounted by a royal crown. Within the garter a hand grenade, *flamant*, with the numerals 62 underneath. On an escrol below, the motto *Scuiper Parvus*.

† The uniform of the Halifax Battalion is dark green with scarlet facings. They bear as badge and motto:—An eight-pointed star (fluted). The regimental number, 63, at upper point, with the words "Halifax Rifles" on a ribbon attached. From the regimental number a bugle suspended by cords and tassels. In the circle of the bugle a maple leaf bearing the word "Canada." Motto: *Cede Nullis* on a ribbon interlaced with bow of bugle cord. The whole surmounted with a "Royal Crown."

‡ Major Egan, of whose interesting account of the battalion the writer has gladly availed himself.

Early in 1860 these various companies were formed into a battalion, Sir W. Fenwick Williams being appointed Colonel, and Captain Cheamley, of the Chebucto Greys, Captain-Commanding. The first appearance of the battalion in uniform was on St. George's Day, 1861, though the preceding months had been diligently employed in steady work at drill and firing practice, the latter especially being exemplified by the fact that in the first General Rifle Match, held at Windsor in August, 1861, "all the honours were carried off by the battalion." In 1864 the rifle green was adopted by all the companies forming the battalion with the exception of the Scottish, which adhered to their first choice of a dark tartan. The official description of the uniform is given as "dark rifle green tunic, pants and chaco, black leather waist-belt, cross-belt and pouch." The Greys had red facings with red ball on chaco, the Halifax Companies retaining the light green. On the occasion of the Fenian Scare of March, 1866, the battalion was called out for active service, the Greys and 2nd Halifax being ordered to McNab's Island, the Scottish Rifles to George's Island, and the rest remaining at headquarters. Doubtless to their disappointment, for they felt and were in good fighting trim, no occasion arose for active service, though they were again ordered out a few months later. In 1868 and 1869 considerable reorganization took place in consequence of the transfer of authority to the Dominion Government, and in December of the latter year the word "Rifles" was added to the designation of the battalion. In May, 1870, they became the "63rd Battalion of Rifles," though "how the battalion came to be called the 63rd," says Major Egan, "has never been satisfactorily explained, the regiment being entitled to the third place in the roll of regiments of the active Militia of Canada, it having had an unbroken existence since the 14th of May, 1860, the only other battalions senior in Canada being the 1st Battalion 'Prince of Wales' Regiment, Montreal, organized November 1st, 1859, and the 2nd Battalion 'Queen's Own' of Toronto, organized 26th April, 1860, eighteen days before the 63rd." In 1873 the rifle busby was adopted, which in 1880 gave place to the helmet.

"Some curious incidents grew out of the decision to adopt a new badge. The design having to be approved of by the officer commanding the Militia of Canada, quite a voluminous correspondence took place. The first design, a Maltese cross, was rejected by this official on the curious plea that the arms of the cross were intended to be inscribed with the name of the actions the battalion would be engaged in, and as the 63rd were not likely ever to be in action, the design was not suitable. Another design submitted was rejected for an equally weighty reason, and the gallant general intimated that there

was not talent enough in the corps to get up a proper design, and that he would himself furnish a badge and motto. This was not very flattering to the 63rd. As the design proposed consisted of a mixture of provincial and city arms, with a codfish as the principal ornament, and the motto, *E Mari Merces* (by the sea we live), it was not considered by the officers quite suitable for a rifle corps. In fact, under ordinary circumstances, it would be supposed the official in question was perpetrating a joke, but it was a matter of notoriety that he was not at all humorous—in fact, quite the reverse. The whole business showed what a large amount of trouble could be made about a trifle, the correspondence extending over six months, when a few minutes could have settled the matter. As the general's design for a badge would have made the battalion the laughing-stock of the whole force, and as his letter accompanying it intimated that if it was not accepted the Governor-General would be called upon to enforce the wishes of the writer, the officers had their design of a badge and motto forwarded to headquarters with a request to have it laid before his Excellency for approval. This had the desired effect, and a description of the present badge and motto was published in General Orders, the motto *Cede Nullis* being adopted." (Egan).

Inter-regimental details of no general interest contribute the history of the battalion up to the eventful year 1885. In that year the 63rd contributed to the formation of the Halifax Provisional Battalion, which served with so much credit during the suppression of the rebellion. The officers of the 63rd who accompanied it were Major Walsh in command, Captains Fortune, Hechler, and Cunningham, Lieutenants Twining, Silver, McKie, Fletcher, James, and Fiske, and Quartermaster Corbin. The total number of officers and men from the 63rd was a hundred and nine. We have before referred to the exceptional severity of the weather, and may note, in this connection, that to one member of the battalion, Private Marwick, it proved fatal. They were not fortunate enough to be engaged in any actual fighting, being detailed to garrison various positions on the Canadian Pacific Railway. Amongst the successes achieved by the battalion at the butts, we may mention the Governor-General's Medal, which has been gained by Lieutenant Bishop (three times), Sergeant Larkin (twice), and Private Spike; the Governor-General's Prize gained in 1884 by Captain Corbin; the McDougall Cup won by Captain St. Clair in 1889; the Standing Match by Bandsman de Freytas; and the Rideau Match by Captain Bishop.

The 64th BATTALION OF RIFLES, the VOLTIGEURS DE BEAUHARNOIS,\* date from 1869,

\* The 64th bear as motto *Toujours Pret.*

though the name recalls the brave days of 1812, and the gallant deeds of the Beauharnois Militia under De Salaberry and Henry at Chateauguay, where Bruyere was wounded, and "Captains Longton and Huncau of the Milice de Beauharnois gave to their men an honourable example."\* The battalion as now constituted has not taken part in any of the Canadian campaigns.

The 65th BATTALION (MOUNT ROYAL) RIFLES,† date from June, 1869. The name—like that of the foregoing regiment—conjures up memories of the days of old Canada, when Montreal was the Mount Royal, and its inmates were constantly on the alert to fight for the existence of their country. The Montreal Rifles of the period were busy in the revolt of 1837. From Montreal came the first signal that the authorities were alive to the danger. The magistrates applied to Sir John Colborne (afterwards Lord Seaton) for a force sufficient to crush the growing rebellion. At St. Charles the Montreal troops‡ distinguished themselves under Colonel Weatherall, and, later on, the Montreal Rifles had some sharp fighting at St. Eustache.

"The Royal Scots and Montreal Rifles, and Captain Globinsky's company of volunteers, were formed in one brigade under Colonel Wetherall. The Volunteers were detached into the woods that border the upper road that leads to St. Eustache, with orders to drive back and disperse the rebel pickets; while the remainder of the brigade, with the other disposable troops, crossed the Ottawa or Grande Rivière on the ice, on the 14th of December, and advancing upon St. Eustache, entered the village at several points. The Scots Royals and Montreal Rifles advanced up the centre street, and seized all the most defensible houses. An officer was ordered to bring up the artillery, but he was driven back by the fire of the rebels, who had posted themselves in the village church. The artillery entered the village by the rear, and with their cannon tried to blow open the church door, but failed; while some companies of the Royals and Rifles occupied the houses in its vicinity. After an hour's firing, the church door still remaining unforced, probably owing to the density of the barricade behind it, a party of the Scots Royals attacked the presbytery, bayoneted some of its defenders, and set it in flames. Lieutenant-Colonel Wetherall now directed his grenadiers to carry it by storm, which they did gallantly, killing several, taking many prisoners, and finally setting it on fire."§

But the Montreal Rifles of to-day have proved themselves no carpet warriors. The regiment, some 350 strong, and commanded by Colonel Ouimet, were in the column

\* *Supra*, p. 206. † The 65th have as a motto *Nusquam Retrorsum*. ‡ Principally cavalry and artillery.

§ Grant.

under General Strange in the 1885 campaign, and their first movements are thus summarised by Major Boulton :—

“General Strange stationed half a company of the 65th, under Lieutenant Normandeu, at Red Deer Crossing, and the other half, under Captain Ettich, at the Government Ford, about forty miles from Edmonton. Captain Ostells' company was sent to the Hudson's Bay post at Battle River, Colonel Ouimet remaining at Edmonton, his headquarters. The remainder of the 65th, under Colonel Hughes, with Colonel Smith's battalion and the mounted men, went to Victoria on their way to Fort Pitt, where they were delayed for some time, not leaving again until the 21st May. They reached Moose Hill Creek on the 24th and Fort Pitt on the 25th inst.; General Strange had scows built to utilise the navigation and save his transport. They conveyed the 65th to Fort Pitt, keeping up communication with the remainder of the column, which marched by the trail. About a hundred of the 65th, under Colonel Hughes, descended the river in a scow for some ten miles, leaving Captain Giroux with his company of the 65th to defend Fort Pitt. The column advanced some two miles farther, and bivouacked for the night, where they were joined by the 65th, who had brought with them neither blanket nor great coat, and had to bivouac as best they could.\* The waggons arrived about eight o'clock in the evening. They again marched at day-break in an easterly direction. The police and scouts deployed as skirmishers, the 65th forming the advance guard about twenty yards behind; then followed the nine-pounder, and the waggons and the Winnipeg Light Infantry as rear guard.”

In the skirmish which took place on the 25th May near Fort Pitt, the 65th had two men, both privates, wounded, both seriously. In the report of the commanding officer, frequent mention is made of the valuable services rendered by the 65th. “The 65th handled the nine-pounder through an almost impassable muskeg with cheerful alacrity. . . . The steady endurance of the Winnipeg Light Infantry under Lieutenant-Colonel Osborne Smith, and the cheerful alacrity of the 65th under Lieutenant-Colonel Hughes, each happily illustrated the military instincts of the two warlike races composing the Dominion of Canada.”

The 66th BATTALION PRINCESS LOUISE FUSILIERS date from 1869, and were one of the regiments which contributed to the Halifax Provisional Battalion in 1885. Major Weston, the senior major of the regiment, was in command of No. 3 Company, with Captain Whitman as his second in command, Captain Kenny acted as adjutant,

\* They were also destitute of rations.



and Dr. Gobin as surgeon, and Captains Humphrey and McKinlay commanded the 4th and 5th Companies respectively. In the record of competitions we find that the Governor-General's Medal was gained in 1885 by Sergeant Gibson, and in 1887 by Captain Weston, Sergeant Gray winning the Bankers' Prize in 1889.

The 67th BATTALION (CARLETON) LIGHT INFANTRY,\* and the 68th (KING'S COUNTY) BATTALION OF INFANTRY, both date from September, 1869. Neither regiment has taken part in the more recent campaigns. Lieutenant McLeod, of the Carleton Light Infantry gained the Governor-General's Medal in 1881, and Captain Fitzpatrick, also of the regiment, gained the same distinction in 1889. The same medal was won by Corporal Eaton of the 68th, in 1879, and three years later by Sergeant Keeley.

The 69th (1ST ANNAPOLIS) BATTALION date from October, 1869, and the 70th (CHAMPLAIN) BATTALION from April in the same year. The 71st (YORK) BATTALION OF INFANTRY date from September, 1869, and—like their half namesakes—of the 12th, the York Rangers, recall the achievements gained by the "brave York Volunteers" in the old wars against America. The 71st have a fair shooting record to boast of. The Governor-General's Medal was gained in 1882 by Colour-Sergeant Smith, in 1883 by Lieutenant McMurray, and in 1885 and 1886 by Sergeant Miner. In 1871 Ensign Johnson secured the McDougall Cup and the Grand Aggregate Prize, winning the latter again two years later; and in 1889 Lieutenant McFarlane gained the Dominion of Canada Match.

The 72nd (2ND ANNAPOLIS) BATTALION OF INFANTRY, date from January, 1870, the 73rd (NORTHUMBERLAND) BATTALION from February, the 74th BATTALION and the 75th (LUNENBURG) BATTALION from August of the same year. None of these regiments has been recently employed. Sergeant Loggie of the Northumberland gained the Governor-General's Prize in 1885 and 1886; and the Governor-General's Medal was gained in 1880, 1885, and 1886 by Major Ar old, Sergeant Weyman and Lieutenant Langstroth respectively, all belonging to the 74th.

The 76th BATTALION OF RIFLES (VOLTIGEURS DE CHATEAUGUAY) were organized in 1872, but their name recalls the splendid presence of a prior existence. We have before referred † to the Voltigeurs raised by the brave Salabery, and to the memorable fight at Chateauguay, a fight which may be said to invest the present regiment with an inherited prestige. It was early in the morning of the 22nd of October, that De Salabery with his Voltigeurs joined De Watteville and Henry—whose men had already

\* The 67th have as a motto *Fidelis Patriæ*.

† *Supra*, p. 205.

"felt" the enemy—and pushed on in advance. Probably never had the gallant Colonel, who as an officer of the 60th had fought at Martinique, Walcheren and elsewhere, shown more clearly his possession of the attributes of a commander.

The previous year he had at the head of his Voltigeurs repulsed the Americans under Dearborn; not a month had elapsed since "De Salabery and his Voltigeurs," with whom were the 4th Battalion under Penault, had effected the spirited relief of our picket at Odelltown. But in the present case he had to strengthen his position by abatis and parapets, a feat which, accomplished as it was, "contributed as much to the brilliant results that ensued as the heroism of his men." When at last the Americans commenced the fight, Lieutenants Guy and Johnson of the Voltigeurs were the first to exchange shots. Then Salabery rode up and the fight commenced in which the Du Chesnays, L'Ecuyer, Guy, Johnson, Powell, Hebben, and those "simples Soldats, Vincent, Pelletier, Vervais, Dubois, and Caron, who swam the river and cut off the retreat of the prisoners," so distinguished themselves. All of the Voltigeurs gained for themselves and their regiment the fame and honour which no country allows to die.

The Voltigeurs of Chateaugay as at present organized have not taken part in active service.

The 77th (WENTWORTH) BATTALION OF INFANTRY date from May, 1872, and the 78th (COLCHESTER, HANTS AND PICTON) BATTALION OF INFANTRY, "HIGHLANDERS" from April, 1871. Of the latter regiment Captain Bamhill, Corporal Lawrence, Sergeant Holesworth, and Sergeant Blair, in the years 1881, 1884, 1885, and 1888 respectively, gained the Governor-General's Medal.

The 79th (SHEFFORD) BATTALION OF INFANTRY "HIGHLANDERS" date from May, 1872, and the 80th (NICOLET) BATTALION OF INFANTRY from June, 1875. The former has a right famous marksman in the person of Sergeant Hall, who in the last two years has won the Standing Match, the Bankers' Prize, the Grand Aggregate, the Snider Aggregate, and the Revolver Match.

The 81st (PORTNEUF) BATTALION OF INFANTRY date from April, 1869, and supply another instance of the fact that many regiments of earlier date are found placed subsequently to those raised later.

The 82nd (QUEEN'S COUNTY) BATTALION OF INFANTRY date from 1875, the 83rd (GOLHETTE) BATTALION from January, and the 84th (ST. HYACINTHE) BATTALION from March, 1871. The Queen's County have to boast the following list of successful competitions:—

In 1879 the Governor-General's Medal was gained by Private Harper and Private Gray, in 1880 by Private Gray, in 1881 by Sergeant Longstroth, in 1882 by Lieutenant McGregor, in 1883 by Lieutenant McGregor and Lieutenant Crockett, in 1886 by Lieutenant Crockett, and in 1887 by Captain Crockett and Private Gray. In 1889 Lieutenant Hooper gained the Rideau Match, and Staff-Sergeant Allen the Martini Matches.

The 85th BATTALION OF INFANTRY \* date from June, 1880, and the 86th (THREE RIVERS) BATTALION † from March, 1871.

The 87th (QUEBEC) BATTALION date from April, 1869, the 88th (KAMOURARCA AND CHARLEVOIX) BATTALION from 1882, and the 89th (TEMISCOUATA AND RIMOUSKI) BATTALION from 1883.

The 90th (WINNIPEG) BATTALION OF RIFLES date from November, 1883, when they were organized by Colonel Kennedy. It was to all human seeming a sad fate which prevented the founder of the corps leading them in the campaign (of 1885) in which they did so valiantly. On the outbreak of the war Colonel Kennedy was in Egypt in connection with the brigade of Canadian Voyageurs engaged for service there. He made haste to rejoin his regiment, but in accordance with an intimation he had received, arranged to stay for a few days in England to permit of his being presented to Her Majesty. Scarcely had he landed when he was attacked by disease, which proved fatal in a few days. The present commanding officer, Colonel Boswell, who was second in command during the war, had served in the Fenian disturbances. The 90th were, as we know, attached to General Middleton's column, and were hotly engaged at Fish Creek, Captain Charles' company being the first to reach the fiercely pressed advance guard. Soon the other companies, with whom were Colonel McKeand, Majors Boswell and Buchan, Captains Ruttan, Wilkes, Forrest, Worsnop, and Whitlaw, came up and the counter attack to the enemy's movements was commenced. The firing was terribly heavy, Fergusson, Ennis, and Hutchinson of the regiment being killed and several wounded. When a volunteer was called for to cross the open to see if the front was clear it was Private Dunn who responded, and shortly afterwards others of the regiment under Lieutenant Macdonald moved forward into the bush on the other side of the ravine, others under Major Buchan pushing further up to the right. When it

\* The 85th bear as motto *Bon cœur et bon bras*.

† The 86th bear as badge :—A shield bearing in centre, on a black ground, the number 86, above that number the motto *Adsem*, and below the name "Trois Rivieres." The shield encircled by a wreath of maple leaves crossed at base, upon which rests a beaver. The whole surmounted by a Royal Crown. All in gold.

became necessary to clear the bush at the end—humorously described, says Major Boulton, as the hornet's nest—Captain Ruttan with his company and some of the dismounted artillery were sent forward for the purpose. The attempt, however, failed, despite the gallantry of the men, and they had to fall back, leaving amongst the dead Private Wheeler of the 90th. The account given by Major Buchan is too graphic to omit: "Volley after volley broke the stillness of the clear morning . . . Passing the various sections of the advance guard, who were already extending for attack, I galloped to the front. When I got round the curve . . . a horrible sight was before me. Riderless horses were scattered about, half a dozen or so of them struggling in death's agonies. The enemy were unseen, save by the puffs of smoke which came from the further side of the plain, but their presence was made very manifest by the whizzing 'zip' and 'ping' of the bullets as they flew over our heads. My appearance was the signal for a volley at myself, which made me realise, as I did all through the day, that mounted officers were the enemy's special targets. The men extended in good shape as they came up, and immediately opened fire from an advantageous position on the edge of the scrub, and gradually crept forward towards the enemy. Not five minutes afterwards Captain Clarke of 'F' Company was struck as he was kneeling in the scrub directing the fire of his sharpshooters." Six of the regiment, including Lieutenant Swinford and Corporal Code, were either killed or succumbed to their wounds received during the battle, while the wounded numbered fourteen, including Captain Clarke and six corporals. The 90th were also "in the thick of it" at the fighting round and subsequent capture of Batoche, charging side by side with the Grenadiers, Midlanders, and Boulton's scouts, and having two men killed and eleven wounded as the price paid for the honour they won. We subjoin an extract from the official report of General Middleton as to the specific services rendered by individual members of the regiment:

"Major Boswell and Captain Buchan of the 90th Battalion were of great help to me in holding the right, and eventually forcing back the enemy under a very heavy fire. Major Boswell was hit in the heel of his boot, and Captain Buchan's horse received a shot. Major Boulton's coolness and firmness in checking the enemy at the commencement of the engagement, was remarkable and deserves great praise. Messrs. Bedson and Secretan also were of great assistance in forming a zareba of waggons round the place selected by the medical men for their temporary hospital, which was almost under fire of the enemy. My thanks are also due to Brigade-Surgeon Orton, 90th battalion, for the excellent arrangement made by him for attending to the wounded, and removing

them to our new camp. The men employed as ambulance men also performed their duty well, not hesitating to bring away the wounded under fire. I cannot conclude without mentioning a little bugler of the 90th Regiment named William Buchanan, who made himself particularly useful in carrying ammunition to the right front when the fire was very hot; this he did with peculiar nonchalance, walking calmly about crying, 'Now, boys, who's for cartridges?'"

The behaviour of the regiment at Batoche elicited further recognition. "The conduct of Major M'Keand commanding the 90th Regiment was everything I could wish. . . . The Field Officers . . . Major Boswell and Acting-Major and Adjutant Buchan are equally to be commended. . . . Thanks are also due to the Reverend D. W. Gordon of the Presbyterian Church, who joined the 90th at Fish Creek Camp and was with them during the fighting at Batoche." A detachment of the 90th accompanied General Middleton in the pursuit of Big Bear. The Governor-General's Medal has been gained by the following members of the 90th—Sergeant Mitchell in 1884 and 1886, Sergeant Maclin in 1885, and Private Gillies in 1888. Sergeant Mitchel has also won the Orient and Bankers' Prize, Grand Aggregate, in 1889.

The 91st BATTALION (MANITOBA LIGHT INFANTRY) date from January, 1889, and represent the Winnipeg Light Infantry which were raised at the time of the North-West Rebellion by Colonel Osborne Smith. The present commanding officer, Colonel Bedson, has seen service in the Fenian outbreak and the Red River Expedition, as well as in the recent rebellion. Major Leacock, the second in command, acted as paymaster to the Winnipeg Light Infantry, and the present Quartermaster and Surgeon held the same ranks in the former regiment. They were not very actively engaged, and on the conclusion of the campaign, remained at Fort Pitt to receive the submission of the Indians.

The 92nd (DORCHESTER, BATTALION OF INFANTRY) date from April, 1869, but have not been engaged in any service of importance.

The 93rd (CUMBERLAND) BATTALION date from April, 1871, and the 94th (VICTORIA) BATTALION OF INFANTRY (ARGYLE HIGHLANDERS) from October in the same year. Neither regiment has been actively engaged.

The 95th BATTALION (MANITOBA GRENADIERS) date from April, 1885, when they were raised by Colonel Scott and known as the Winnipeg Infantry Battalion.\* Nearly all

\* They would seem to have been numbered the 92nd, though Boulton refers to them as the 91st, the 92nd, according to him, having been the Light Infantry.

the present officers served through the campaign, the present commanding officer being second in command. They were first stationed at Troy, and afterwards at Qu'Appelle, and consequently did not share in the actual fighting part of the expedition.

The 96th (DISTRICT OF ALGONIA) BATTALION OF RIFLES date from December, 1886, and have consequently no service to record. In 1889, the present commander, Colonel Ruy, gained the Rideau Match.

Of the Independent Companies, the NEW WESTMINSTER RIFLE COMPANY date from 1877, the ST. JOHN RIFLE COMPANY \* from 1862, and the ST. JEAN BAPTISTE INFANTRY COMPANY from 1879. The St. John Rifles were originally an Engineer Company, but in 1882 became Rifles. The Governor-General's Medal has been gained by the following members of the New Westminster: Sergeant Brown (1875, 1876), Sergeant Jackson (1875, 1879, 1881), Corporal Seoullar (1882), and Private Trapp (1884). Of the St. John Rifle Company, Captain Hart gained the Medal in 1882, 1884, and 1889, in the first named year winning the Grand Aggregate Prize, and in 1888 the Governor-General's Prize. The Grand Aggregate Prize in 1887 fell to Lieutenant Smith.

No notice of the military strength of Canada would be complete which ignored mention of the NORTH-WEST MOUNTED POLICE. It is true that their constitution approximates them to Regulars rather than to Militia, while their duties are more comprehensive than those of either. The force has been organized but a few years, but in that time enough has been done to gain for it a reputation of world-wide extent.

The *materiel* of the Mounted Police resembles that of other similar bodies in the other colonies. A writer who served some time in the ranks, gives the following idea of the men who composed them:—

“There were all sorts and conditions of men. Many I found in various troops were related to English families in good position. There were three men at Regina who had held commissions in the British service. There was also an ex-officer of militia and one of volunteers. There was an ex-midshipman, son of the governor of one of our small Colonial dependencies; a son of a major-general, an ex-cadet of the Canadian Royal Military College at Kingston, a medical student from Dublin, two ex-troopers of the Scots Greys, a son of a captain in the line, and an Oxford B.A. In addition there were many Canadians belonging to families of influence, as well as several from the backwoods, who had never seen the light till their fathers had hewed a way through

\* The St. John Rifle Company bear as badge a bugle, with the motto *Quo Patria Vocat*.

the bush to a concession road. Several of our men sported medals, won in South Africa, Egypt, and Afghanistan."

A correspondent of a Canadian paper amplifies the above description. After referring in laudatory terms to the services rendered by the force in the North-West Rebellion, he goes on to say—"Officers and men alike live a hard life, a lonely life, a life in many cases almost as hard and lonely as that of Alexander Selkirk, and this sort of existence is dragged out by men, many of whom not long ago were the pets of society in this and other lands. Many a silent tongue in the ranks could tell a strange tale if it chose." The original establishment of the Police was five troops of a hundred each, which was increased on the termination of the North-West Rebellion to a thousand men. The chief officers are a commissioner and assistant commissioner, ranking as lieutenant-colonel and major. The uniform was scarlet serge tunic, blue breeches, yellow stripe, blue cloak and helmet, or a busby-shaped fur cap with yellow bag. The service rig out was a brown Norfolk jacket, moleskin riding pants, a black slouch hat, with a red puggaree, the effect being, in the words of the writer before quoted "a cross between a Montana desperado and a Sardinian chasseur."

The outbreak of the North-West Rebellion gave to the Mounted Police the opportunity, if such were needed, of showing of what metal they were made. We say "if" advisedly, inasmuch as previous to the outbreak the tranquillity and good order which prevailed in the districts guarded by the Police were matters of remark. As Major Boulton well remarks—"The whole of a vast region, 1,800 miles long by 400 broad, filled with a half-breed and Indian population, had hitherto been well and peacefully governed by a small force of five hundred Mounted Police, who in themselves combined military and civil elements. By this force the law had been administered and upheld. By their coolness and courage on occasions without number they had entered the camps of the excited Indians, and with their escort of two or three been accustomed to take their prisoner." As is well known the fight at Duck Lake was the opening scene of the drama of the Rebellion. In March, 1885, Captain Moore of the Police marched to Fort Carlton, whence Major Crozier had sent requesting reinforcements. And it was fortunate that he did so. In the fight that soon after took place the services rendered by the Police were incalculable. Three of the force were killed, Captain Moore and several others more or less severely injured. The war had now begun in earnest, and a party of the Mounted Police under Colonel Herchmer were attached to Colonel Otter's column. It will give an idea of the wide extent over which the Mounted Police had to operate

if we state the positions they occupied. The "A" troop were at Maple Creek and Medicine Hut; the "B" troop at Regina and along the line of railway; the "C" troop "held Fort Macleod away in the grassy ranching country among the Blood and Peigans at the foot of the Rockies." The "D" troop were on the North Saskatchewan; the "E" troop were at Calgary and along the line of railway then constructing; outposts were at Prince Albert, Fort Pitt, Edmonton, and Fort Saskatchewan. When the issue of Duck Lake gave encouragement to the rebels it was at once evident that the position of Battleford was critical. The only force available for its defence on the spot was the Battleford Rifles, a few Mounted Police under Inspector Morris, and at Fort Pitt, a hundred miles off, twenty-five troopers of the same body commanded by Inspector Dickens. As has been said, Colonel Otter marched to the relief of Battleford, and on the 2nd May was fought the battle of Cut Knife Hill. At the head of the attacking column was Colonel Herchmer with his troopers of the Mounted Police. When the enemy were felt the Police were dismounted and advanced in skirmishing order to the top of the hill, followed by the guns and the Gatling. A determined charge was made by the Indians to capture the latter, in which fell Corporal Sleigh of the Police. The details of the action have before been given; we need therefore only mention here that in addition to Corporal Sleigh, Colonel Lowry and Constable Burke were killed, and Sergeant Ward wounded.

In General Strange's column there were about eighty mounted police, under Majors Steele and Perry and Captain Oswald, and to them it fell to avenge the hideous massacre at Fort Pitt, in the defence of which Inspector Dickens and Corporal Sleigh so distinguished themselves, and Constable Cowan was killed and Constable Loasby badly wounded. General Strange reached Fort Pitt on the 25th May, and on the 28th, with the bulk of his force, attacked the Indians. In this engagement Constable Macrae of the Police was wounded. In the closing scenes of the rebellion the Mounted Police were busily engaged, and to Inspector Gagnon fell the distinction of arresting Big Bear. Amongst those especially mentioned in reports were Sergeant-Major Watton, "whose brilliant example and dogged courage gave confidence and steadiness to those within the sound of his voice"; Constable Ross, chief scout, who was "always ready to lead a dash or take his place in the skirmish line, and in fact seen everywhere and at the proper time"; Lieutenant-Colonel Herchmer who "displayed the most sterling qualities of a soldier, while the men of his command time and again proved themselves invaluable"; Sergeant O'Connor, Captain Neale, Captain Cotton, Captain Hamilton, Major Steele, and Major Perry.



With the termination of the North-West Rebellion ended, as is known, the record of active military service of the Canadian army. Medals were distributed and honours conferred and, in a spirit which reminds us somewhat of the old Roman use to those who had deserved well of their country, the Legislature gave to each Canadian soldier the grant of three hundred and twenty acres of land without charge, or, failing their desire to become settlers, scrip which would be accepted by the Dominion Government as payment of land to the value of eighty dollars.

And now with but a few words in conclusion we must quit, albeit reluctantly, our consideration of the Canadian Militia. In days when a spirit of self-depreciation would seem to be considered by some the highest virtue, as representing the melancholy truth, it is gratifying to find those who may claim the highest position, both as thinkers and warriors, speaking with no uncertain sound of the strength of this portion of the Empire.

In a recent article, General Strange, whose experience (already noticed) with the Canadian army renders him a competent authority, writes as follows:—

“I hope I shall not be supposed to be looking forward with any satisfaction to an event so disastrous to mankind, as would be any quarrel between Great Britain and her gigantic daughter across the Atlantic. But for the preservation of peaceful relations it is all important that nations should respect one another. The kind of talk in which Mr. Goodwin Smith and his few friends in Canada indulge, which assumes that the independence of Canada depends on the mere goodwill of the States, and that the Union has only to stretch out its hand to snatch the already ripe apple, is not favourable to those dignified mutual relations which alone can ensure peace. It is well to remind English statesmen that they have a quiver full of faithful sons to guard the Canadian border, and that they need not be afraid to speak in the gate with the Statesmen of the United States, either as friends or enemies.”

And yet another—the most famous of her Governor-Generals, a statesman in the foremost rank, an orator whose equal it would be hard to find—has, in words whose beauty and prescience alike forbid the forgetting, thus written of the Loyal Dominion of the North-West:—

“In a world apart, secluded from all extraneous influences, nestling at the feet of her majestic mother, Canada dreams her dream and forebodes her destiny—a dream of ever-broadening harvests, multiplying towns and villages, and expanding pastures, of constitutional self-government, and a confederated empire; of page after page of

honourable history, added as her contribution to the annals of the mother country, and to the glories of the British race; of a perpetuation for all time upon this continent of that temperate and well-balanced system of government which combines in one mighty whole, as the eternal possession of all Englishmen, the brilliant history and traditions of the past with the present and most untrammelled liberty of action in the future."

We have now to notice the military forces of another of the important possessions of Great Britain. We refer to the CAPE. Though of late years, owing in great part to the unsatisfactory condition of our relations with Boers and Natives the general acquaintance with this colony has become more extensive, yet it may be assumed that a very considerable amount of ignorance exists, not only as to the history but as to the political characteristics of our South African Possessions. The tension between British and Boers is only too familiar, but the reasons for this tension are scarcely ever considered. And yet ignorance with respect to a possession, the area of which extends throughout its length and breadth to two hundred and fifty thousand square miles, can scarcely redound to the credit of subjects of the greatest colonial empire in the world.

We at present occupy the position of successors to a long line of previous owners. Far back in the annals of antiquity we come across mention of early enterprise which brought South Africa and the Cape to the knowledge of the world-rulers of the time. But the modern history of this colony of ours, which exceeds in size both Germany and France, may be said to commence with the concluding years of the fifteenth century. To the Portuguese, then in the zenith of their power, belong the credit of finding out the new passage to the east round the Cape, though they did not actually found any colony. Rather more than a hundred years later the Dutch, who were elbowing the Portuguese out of their place of priority as oriental traders, in their turn employed the Cape as a sort of calling station; but it was reserved for two Englishmen, Humphrey FitzHerbert and Andreas Shilling, to take formal possession of the territory in the name of the king of England. Beyond this thoroughly English assertion of right and possession we do not seem to have done much, and thirty years later the Dutch obtained from the natives permission to settle there. The colonists after a time settled down fairly quietly, and the settlement gradually increased in importance. It is probable that some of its popularity arose from the tradition which seemed in some

way to have survived that far away in the interior lay the famous land of Ophir whence came the good red gold which gleamed in such profusion in the splendid court of Solomon the Wise. In the process of time Holland became subject to the French, and it became the duty of England to check the inordinate power of the Republic. Accordingly Generals Clark and Craig, with a fleet under Admiral Elphinstone, took possession with something more of effectiveness than did the two bold Englishmen a hundred and fifty years before. The Dutch were too conscious of the value of the Cape to submit without a struggle to losing it, and a strong armament, naval and military, was despatched to evict those pestilent English. The result, however, was that the pestilent English, acting in a manner peculiarly their own, adopted such measures that the whole Dutch fleet was surrendered. For a few years a clause in a treaty effected what hostile ships and soldiers had failed to do, namely, the return of the colony to the Dutch. But in 1806, war having broken out again, another expedition, naval and military, under Sir Home Popham and Sir David Baird, proceeded to the Cape, landed, and took possession in two days, and a fortnight later the colony was finally surrendered to the English.

"In the articles of capitulation," writes a historian, "it was stipulated that a battalion of Hottentot Infantry in the Dutch service should march to Simon's Town with the other Batavian troops, after which they should be allowed to return to their country or to engage in the British service as they might feel inclined. A number of them tendering their services they were formed into a corps at Wynberg under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Graham, and thus originated, after they were horsed, the regiment of Cape Mounted Riflemen,\* so useful in future conflicts with the Kaffres."

It very soon became apparent that the British tenure of the colony was not to be entirely without trouble. The Boers were jealous; the natives failed to distinguish between their old foes and their new protectors. Some of the natives, who may be distinguished generally as Hottentots, were yielding and offered no real resistance to the ever-increasing area of colonisation; others, whom we may class as Kaffirs,† were of sterner material, and when the van of the white settlers approached gave speedy evidence that they would allow no further encroachment. These pushing settlers were the Boers, and proximity soon led to outrages on one side or the other. The Kaffirs

\* This corps must not be identified with the Cape Mounted Rifles, as at present organized.

† Space does not allow of a more correct denomination of the various native septa included in the Kossa clans.

not seldom appropriated cattle; the Boers retaliated by their *commandos*, in which as a rule human lives paid for the cattle on something like equal terms. The British endeavoured to effect such arrangements as should insure peace; they made a treaty with Gaika, one of the most powerful of the native chiefs; and eventually settled the boundaries of settlers and natives at the Great Fish River. Those of the latter who remained on the nearer side were ruthlessly expelled by the Boers; quarrels grew in ferocity; and the treaty made in 1817 provoked the Kaffirs to war against our ally Gaika. In 1819 they made a furious attack against Graham's Town; British and Colonial troops invaded the native territory, and when peace was agreed on another tract of land was ceded to the colony. So evident had it become that the Boers would perpetually involve us in disputes, that stimulus was given to a scheme for the immigration of British settlers on a large scale, and comparative tranquillity reigned till in 1830 an important Kaffir chieftain was shot by the Boers—as the latter say during a fray, but according to the natives in cold blood. In 1834 another war broke out, followed by one of those extraordinary agreements so frequently met with in South African history, which give the foes the impression that they have frightened us into making terms. In 1846 another war broke out which will be referred to hereafter; in 1852 we were at war with the Amatolas; the warfare of 1873, 1879, and the following years is not likely to be yet forgotten.

As it will be obviously impossible within the space at our disposal to give anything like a full account of the various local military forces available for the defence of the colony, it will be well in order to appreciate fully the nature of the eventualities with which they may have to deal, to glance, though very briefly, at the territorial and political composition of her Majesty's dominions in South Africa. We have briefly sketched above the prominent features in the history of Cape Colony up to the most recent war. Kaffraria, the district lying to the west of Cape Colony, was incorporated about twenty-five years ago. Amongst the native tribes are the Fingoes, whose fighting value as our allies has been gradually but decidedly increased under British leadership. Natal was annexed in 1843, previously to which it had been the theatre and cause of much sanguinary conflict. Settled by us in 1823, in 1838 a considerable immigration of Boers took place, owing to the want of encouragement their peculiar methods of dealing with the natives met with in Cape Colony. The Zulus resisted, and the Boers found themselves again in constant disputes with their neighbours, over whom, however, they speedily triumphed and declared themselves independent of the

British power. We bore the loss with equanimity till, in 1841, the Boers proposed to go to war with some of our native allies—the Amaponda Kaffirs. This the Governor at the Cape could not permit, and, remonstrances proving futile, a small force was despatched over the six hundred miles which separated Graham's Town from Cape Colony. The British force, consisting of some two hundred and fifty men only, was completely outnumbered, and suffered several reverses, despite courage which even Boer sympathisers were compelled to admire. In 1842 reinforcements arrived, and Natal was annexed to the Colony. The occurrence deserves a passing mention, as illustrating the peculiar qualifications of British soldiers for securing victory out of circumstances which to all appearance threaten sudden, complete, and irretrievable ruin, and as evincing the readiness with which the colonists of the day co-operated with the Imperial Forces. The small force referred to consisted of two hundred men, and a couple of field pieces, under the command of Captain Smith, who hauled down the Republican flag which had been hoisted, displaying in its stead the Union Jack. Keenly alive, then as afterwards, to the advantages of negotiations which one party enters into in good faith, the other with a view to perfecting their arrangements, the Boers engaged in parleys, during the progress of which they collected an overwhelming force. Then they commenced hostilities. Captain Smith, with a courage which bordered on rashness, determined on a night attack, his force being augmented by some settlers. The attack was disastrous; more than a third of the little band were reported "killed, wounded, or missing," and the residue had to evacuate the city and entrench themselves in their camp. There they were besieged for thirty-one days, enduring the extremes of want and suffering; there they might have fallen as other British soldiers have done before and since, had it not been for the gallantry of one man, who, to save his comrades, braved dangers from which the bravest might well have shrunk. Mr. Richard King left the beleaguered garrison one midnight, and set out on a ride which should ever be memorable in a nation which loves brave deeds and gallant horsemanship. "There were six hundred miles to be traversed through the heart of Kaffirland, two hundred rivers to be crossed, and tribes of savages to be passed through—many of whom were too ready to stop and plunder or murder a solitary traveller—in order to convey information of their destitute and trying circumstances to those from whom alone relief could be obtained; the journey being enough to damp the courage and break the heart of any one except an Englishman. Such deeds of determination and of daring remind us of olden times, in which astonishing acts of valour were performed by our forefathers, whose soul is truly found among the

settlers of Albany. This herculean task was successfully performed in ten days, two of which were spent in sickness and consequent detention, thereby leaving only eight days' actual travelling. Many of the rivers had to be swam from bank to bank; so that, taking the whole journey into account, it was one of the most wonderful performances ever recorded in the pages of history." (Holden.) As a result of King's heroism, two British ships, the *Coneh* and the *Southampton*, arrived on Midsummer Day, 1842, and with very little trouble took possession of Natal, thus adding to the Empire the first colony acquired in the present reign.\*

One of the most effective causes of the comparative severity of all the wars with the natives since 1867 is to be found in the recklessly unwise policy which encouraged supplying the natives with firearms. These were given in the first instance practically as wages for labour done in making the railways. To quote the words of Sir Arthur Cunynghame, whose weight as an authority cannot be questioned, "to make the natives work only one inducement was effectual, the permission to purchase firearms. There was a law forbidding the acquisition of arms by natives . . . unfortunately this salutary provision was not attended to. Companies of natives marched home, each bearing his musket on his shoulder. . . . For a while, blinded by a desire to secure cheap labour, the colonists allowed the natives to arm, *until at least 400,000 muskets and rifles, some of them breech-loaders, had been acquired.*"

The military forces of South Africa may be enumerated as follows:—

FOR CAPE COLONY—

A Permanent Force of Cape Mounted Rifles.

A Volunteer Force of—

*For the Western District.*

Prince Alfred's Own Volunteer Artillery.

The 3rd Corps (Cape Town Irish Volunteer Rifles).

The Cape Town Engineers.

The Paarl Volunteer Rifles.

The Duke of Edinburgh's Own Volunteer Rifles.

The Worcester Volunteer Rifles.

The Wellington Volunteer Rifles.

The First Administrative Regiment—

The Victoria College Volunteer Rifles.

The 2nd Corps (Cape Town Highlanders).

The South African College Cadet Corps.

Queen Victoria's Cadet Battalion.

\* It is interesting in the light of more recent warfare to read that "during the interval between the establishment and the raising of the siege, all loyal Boers or British subjects were plundered and ill-treated in the most ruthless manner by the then victorious party." (Deace.)

*For the Midland District.*

The Diamond Field Horse.	The Knysna Rangers.
The Graham's Town Volunteer Horse Artillery.	The Victoria Rifles of Kimberley.
Prince Alfred's Volunteer Guard.	The St. Andrew's College Cadet Corps (Graham's Town).
The 1st City (Graham's Town) Volunteers.	The Graham's Town Public School Cadet Corps.
The Highlands Mounted Co. of 1st City (Handsworth).	

*For the Frontier District.*

King William's Town Volunteer Artillery.	The Queen's Town Rifle Volunteers.
The Kaffrarian Mounted Rifles (Kei Roal).	The Queen's Town High School Cadet Corps.
The Frontier Mounted Rifles.	The Panmure Public School Cadet Corps.
The Kaffrarian Rifles (East London).	
The King William's Town Cadet Corps.	

The Bechuanaland Border Police.

## FOR NATAL—

A Permanent Force of Natal Mounted Police.

A Volunteer Force of—

The Natal Carabineers.	The Natal Field Artillery.
The Natal Mounted Rifles.	The Natal Royal Rifles.

It will be obvious when the dates of the various corps as now organized are considered that none of them can have played any part in the earlier warfare of the colony. It is true that in every one of these wars the colonists were represented by various bodies of volunteers, but these were, so to speak, raised *ad hoc*, and with but few exceptions have only a nominal continuity in the existing regiments. In two cases at least old corps have been absorbed into the Cape Mounted Rifles, namely the Cape Infantry Regiment, raised as a garrison force in the time of the Native troubles, and the Cape Field Artillery.

As the permanent force of the colony, the CAPE MOUNTED RIFLES will call for a somewhat extended notice, being, as it is, probably the most familiar of all colonial regiments to the home dwelling subjects of the mother country. Before, however, glancing at the history of the corps as now organized a few words will not be out of place respecting the former Cape Mounted Rifles, which practically ceased to exist not long after the campaign

of 1852. We have already mentioned the origin of the corps, and on many occasions they proved of great service in the frequent engagements and disputes with the natives. But owing to circumstances on which it would be out of place to dwell here, their fidelity had become impaired, and in the war of 1852 a considerable number deserted to the enemy.

In the latter end of 1850 the Colonists were indeed threatened with terrible danger. Everywhere the Kaffirs were rising; outlying farms and homesteads were destroyed, cattle stolen, houses hitherto regarded as secure given to the flames, while their contents were plundered and their occupants had to flee for dear life. What made the outbreak the more serious was the possession by the Kaffirs of firearms in enormous quantities. The official returns gave the numbers as "three thousand stand of arms, six million rounds of ball cartridge, half a million assegais, with ample means of supply." The situation called for decisive action, and fortunately the Commander-in-Chief, Sir Henry Smith, was, to borrow the description applied by a brilliant novelist to one of his characters, "a man formed by nature for great emergencies." A police force was formed, volunteer corps organized, and a demonstration in force made at the foot of the Amatolas. With the troops there assembled were the Cape Mounted Rifles and some Kaffir Police. On Christmas Eve a detachment, some eight hundred strong, under Colonel Mackinnon, were directed to endeavour to apprehend Sandilli, who, it was supposed, was in hiding in the Keis-Kamma Hoek. The Mounted Rifles and Police were in advance and had penetrated a narrow defile—so narrow was it that the men had to pass in single file—the remainder of the troops following closely on their heels, when suddenly a terrific musketry fire was opened from both sides of the defile. The British replied doggedly and with eventual success, but the enemy were not repulsed till twenty-one officers and men were killed or wounded. On the face of it the immunity of the Police and Mounted Rifles was suspicious, and suspicion became certainty when the following day nearly four hundred of the former deserted *en masse* to the enemy. It was a terrible Christmastide for the soldiers and settlers. At home, "in the dear old country," healths were being pledged and prayers sent up for fathers and husbands, and sons and daughters, who even then were lying hideously murdered, or were holding their own against desperate odds, pitted against foes who mutilated men and outraged women. General Smith himself was shut up in Fort Cox, and only escaped by a brilliant dash through the surrounding foes, in which he was accompanied by some of the Cape Mounted Rifles. Early in the following March a number of the last-named corps deserted, and thereupon



the coloured men were disbanded, and the regiment rendered more trustworthy, though numerically weaker. As indicative of the serious nature of this defection it may be mentioned that, in a skirmish we had with the enemy a few weeks later, their commander was found to be a deserter from the Cape Corps, who posed with the borrowed importance of a British officer, issuing his orders in writing, and profiting by his past training to place his men in regular formation.

During the fighting which centred round the Waterkloof, the Cape Mounted Rifles were actively engaged, and rendered valuable service, many being wounded—amongst them Captain Bramley—in the skirmish of the 2nd of March. In the fifth attack on that stubborn fortress, a hundred and fifty of their number were in Colonel Napier's column; they were well to the fore in all the subsequent operations, and formed part of Napier's Cavalry Brigade in the Orange River Expedition, suffering some loss in the final action at Berea. Soon after the termination of the war the corps ceased to exist, and THE FRONTIER ARMED AND MOUNTED POLICE were organized, opinion at the time freely canvassing the wisdom of the one step and the effectiveness of the other. Yet, on the latter point, it seems clear that the occasion for criticism was not in the *personnel*. The individual items which constituted the corps were, generally speaking, made of the right stuff for soldiering, but it was long a question whether their qualifications had fair play. The Frontier Armed Mounted Police are described as being "nominally a thousand strong, clad in a costume scarcely equal to that of a railway porter. It was a dress of corduroy, dipped in logwood till it became unbearably stiff; with this was a cap having a small peak, and leggings to go over the trousers. When dry, this clothing was so hot that the men longed to throw it off, and when wet, became so heavy, that the weight could scarcely be borne. Yet, thus clad, they were expected to encounter supple, active, and powerful savages, almost in a state of nudity, free and unencumbered by anything." In this connection it must be remembered that the Kaffirs have been described, on no mean authority, as "perfect light troops," and such force as there was in the complaints made will be appreciated. "The force consisted nominally of one thousand men. I have already mentioned," says the author of "With the Cape Mounted Rifles," "that *supposition* goes a long way in estimating military arrangements in the Colony, and it went very far certainly in this instance. Whether the returns were falsified or not, I am unable to say, but the force more probably never exceeded eight hundred men. The troops of this force, altogether inadequate in numbers to the duties assigned to it and the services expected of it, were distributed as follows:—

Artillery.	Komgha.	No. 5.	King William's Town and District.
No. 1.	Queenstown.	No. 6.	Transkei.
No. 2.	Kokstadt.	No. 7.	Peddie.
No. 3.	Komgha and Grey Town.	No. 8.	Kenhardt.
No. 4.	Palmeitfontein and Kei River.	No. 9.	Ealing's Post. Depôt. Fort Murray.

"The arrangements and organization of the force were as follows :

"A commandant in charge of and commanding the whole force, with his headquarters and staff at King William's Town.

"His staff consisted of paymaster, sergeant-major, three sergeants, two corporals, and three privates. All these were employed in office work.

"In each troop there was an inspector and two sub-inspectors. All with one exception had risen from the ranks, and this one exception had exchanged from civil service. There was a sergeant-major to each troop, and the allowed number of sergeants were divided amongst the whole force.

"The rank and file of the force, so far as *personnel* was concerned, was excellent.

"In 1877, Sandilli and Kre', at the head, respectively, of the Gaikas and Galckas, commenced attacking the Fingoes, to whose protection we were bound.

"It was not very long before hostilities broke out. On the 25th September a strong body of the enemy approached, and it became evident that they meant fighting.

"The force of Police assembled at Ibeka consisted as follows :—

Artillery, 3 guns, 3 officers, 45 men.	No. 6 Troop, 1 officer, 25 men.
No. 3 Troop, 3 officers, 60 men.	No. 7 Troop, 3 officers, 120 men.

"No. 9 Troop was left at Tobui, and a part of No. 6 was left at Pullen's Farm, to keep communication open. No. 1 Troop joined us at Ibeka two days later; so the total of the force now brought together consisted of 13 officers and 295 non-commissioned officers and men.

"On the 25th part of No. 5 Troop, consisting of one officer and 40 men, arrived. They were also ordered out; but as they had just come off a march, the proposed patrol was postponed for one day. On the 26th, at nine o'clock in the morning, the above troops left for Idutywa. Little did we think, when we saw our comrades march out of Ibeka cheering and in the best of spirits, that some of them would bite the dust before sunset."

The best description of the action is supplied by the official report, from which a juster conception of the serious and ferocious nature of the warfare in which we were engaged can be gathered, than from any epitomised account of the affair. Some five thousand of the enemy attacked our little force at Mount Wodehouse, or, as the natives called it, Guadana, and the fighting soon became very severe.

"After the tenth round," wrote Inspector Chalmers, "the gun became disabled, and promptly ordered back under Mr. Cochrane and the escort. This was immediately carried out, and the gun, under Sub-Inspector Cochrane and A. Maclean, with 25 men as gun escort, retired accordingly. Before entering into action, my men were extended in skirmishing order on the brow of the hill, the horses having been left out of sight, in hand and in charge of the usual number of men. The Fingoes, under Mr. Ayliff, were placed on the left flank, between the gun and the Guadana forest, so as to command the bush. My men were placed on the right of the gun. When the Galekas came within rifle range I ordered the police to commence firing, and continuous independent firing was kept up for nearly two hours, which checked the enemy until the gun retired. When the Fingoes saw this they made a general retreat, running in among our horses and causing great confusion.

"Finding that we were deserted by the Fingoes, and that by remaining on the ground any longer the lives of the whole European police would be sacrificed, I ordered the men to retire. The confusion by the Fingoes rushing about in all directions caused several of our horses to break loose, and through this unfortunate circumstance one officer and six men fell victims to the enemy. The remainder of the men retired in order, and the gun was taken safely to the Idutyma. The firing from the 7-pounder was most effective, and so was also that of the Suiders. The estimated loss on the Galeka side was at least 200 besides wounded. I may say that the Fingoes, when asked why they retreated so soon, replied that they had been watching the gun, and when they saw it move they thought it was time to leave the battlefield. I cannot attach any blame to our men in the engagement; they stood their ground until the very last, fired steadily, and were it not for the gun breaking down, I have no hesitation in asserting that the result would have been different. Finding the gun and men were safe, I proceeded to the Ibeka camp in company with Inspector J. Maclean and Sub-Inspector Hamilton, where I personally reported the engagement to you, and returned to the Idutyma reserve on the morning of the 27th September.

"The Galeka army must have numbered about 5,000. Our force consisted of 180 men and about 1,500 Fingoes."

The author of "With the Cape Mounted Rifles" thus comments upon the affair:—

"Such was the battle of Guadana. It was fought under adverse circumstances, and in a nasty bit of country. The Fingoes fought badly, as they always do if they are not commanded by white leaders. They never stood, but retreated firing from the very first. Mr. Chalmers' account is substantially correct. I heard the same version from some men engaged, as well as from the Fingoes. The men who were killed, with the exception of Mr. Van Hohenan, lost their lives through Fingoes taking their horses."

According to the same candid friend, the "strategic movement to the rear" effected by both Police and Fingoes was barely distinguishable from a flight, but this has been—and not unnaturally—strenuously denied. The fighting at Guadana was quickly followed by other skirmishes, and it became evident that the "women's war" would prove no holiday pastime for the few and ill-prepared troops\* on whom it devolved to defend our interests and territory.

The whole garrison defending Ibeka now consisted of some hundred and fifty troopers of the Frontier Armed Mounted Police, two thousand Fingoes under the valiant Allan Maclean, and about half a dozen casual volunteers. The force opposed to them was at least eight thousand, led by Sidgow, a young son of Kreli, with whom, as guide, philosopher, and friend, and occupying a position somewhat analogous to that of a well-known Russian general in the Crimean War, was the Amazonian Witch Doctor Nita. We will again quote from the eye-witness before mentioned.

"The enemy, on approaching within about 1,200 yards, threw out skirmishers, who began firing as they neared the boundary. This move was resisted by some 500 Fingoes under Veldtman, who dispatched them to meet the enemy. On our extreme right Allan Maclean, with the remainder of the Fingoes, supported them, the Police being thrown out in skirmishing order round the immediate front and left. When the mounted men of the enemy appeared over the ridge we fired at them with two shells; both, however, went over their heads. Two rocket tubes were then brought into action, and did great execution, frightening the horses, and causing many of them to bolt. We then commenced to fire our three 7-pounders, and the action became general along the whole line. Shell after shell was plumped right into the middle of the square columns, causing great slaughter. When the columns were broken after a little hard firing, the enemy extended themselves in skirmishing order, and again

\* The only regular troops on the frontier were some of the 1-24th, and though volunteers were raised their effectiveness was naturally not thorough for want of training.

and again charged right up to us within fifty yards of the guns. Our fire, however, was too much for them, and they frequently had to retire to take rest, still at intervals coming on again and again, but with no better success.

“Their mounted men were thus thoroughly broken up and dispersed by the rockets and shells.

“At last, after several plucky charges, they collected together about five o'clock for a final effort. On and on they came, one scrambling, yelling mass, but only to be mowed down by our shell and rockets. Right up to the guns they came, and we poured shell, case, rockets, and Snider bullets into them with determined precision and effect, till at last they wavered. Down swept the Fingoes, with Allan Maclean leading them, and some fifty men of the Police led by his brother, Inspector John Maclean, cheering as they charged the enemy, and pouring in a heavy fire. As this section of our force advanced, the Galekas turned and fled, leaving their guns, blankets, and everything behind them as they ran for dear life, hotly pursued by the very men they had reckoned on easily beating.

“The 7-pounders continued firing until the enemy were out of range. Till then we had no time to look about us.

“The fight had lasted from ten in the morning till five in the afternoon, and it was rapidly getting dark. Wonderful to relate, we had not one man killed, and only four or five wounded, and these wounds were all scratches.”

Then there was fighting at Kreli's Kraal, then at Luisi, then on the 2nd of December, at Umzuitzani, where the future colonel of the Cape Mounted Police, then Captain Bayley, commanded, and the fierce determination of the enemy caused serious apprehension along the ill-defended frontier. It seemed, indeed, at one time as though the overpowering numbers of the Galekas must enable them entirely to annihilate our small force. Once—it was, perhaps, the most dramatic incident of the day—a band of at least five hundred Galekas charged madly down on a force of thirty-two, twenty troopers of the Police and a dozen artillerymen. Fortunately they were able to retire, all save three whose steeds were either lost or shot. “Two got safe under the muzzle of the gun, but a third—named Wellesley—whose thigh bone had been broken by a shot, was immediately assegaied, though he fought desperately on his knees, and slew four Kaffirs before he was despatched. Many were shot down by the troopers and artillerymen, as they clustered in a mob about the miserable man, stabbing him to death. Lieutenant Wells waited till the Galekas were within sixty yards of the gun, and fired a case shot with terrible effect into the midst of them. Then, instantly taking advantage of the terror, confusion, and

slaughter that had ensued, he limbered up, and withdrew at a gallop, bringing off with him in safety the two Police troopers." At Nyumoxa the Police under Inspectors Bourne and Chalmers most creditably acquitted themselves, and a few days afterwards took part in the decisive actions at Quintana, and on the Black Kei, where Commandant Griffiths defeated the army of Congabelo with considerable loss. Early in the following year fresh operations were necessitated by the hostile attitude of Sandilli, Cetewayo, Sekukuni, and others, and, under Evelyn Wood, the Frontier Armed and Mounted Police were again busily engaged. At daylight on the 7th February, 1878, many of the enemy's scouts were again seen on the hills in front of us; the camp was called, all the tents struck, and the force—so we learn from one writer—stationed as follows:—The 9-pounder was placed at the N.W. corner of the trench, the 7-pounder at the S.W., with the 24-pounder rocket tube in the middle, Carrington's horse on the right front, Fingoes on the left front, the 24th lined the trench immediately fronting the enemy, and the police were stationed on the east side, in case of the enemy trying to outflank us.

A heavy drenching rain now came on, and speedily wetted everyone through. About six o'clock in the morning the Light Horse under Captain Carrington with a few police, and a company of the 24th were sent out to try and draw the enemy on; this they did most successfully. On the Kaffirs came, some in columns and some skirmishing; the Light Horse and party retired into the camp as directed, where the remainder of our men had been kept out of sight in the trenches. The Kaffirs evidently supposing that the party they had seen skirmishing was the entire force, advanced at a rapid rate across the veldt, charging directly for our camp. We computed the number to be about 4,000.

When the enemy had reached within 500 yards our men quietly put their heads up out of the trenches, and commenced a heavy fire at the astonished Kaffirs, the big guns and the rocket tube at the same time opening fire.

They stood this for about twenty minutes. They had tolerably good shelter, and a heavy mist was coming on, sometimes completely obscuring them from us; but after the expiration of about half an hour the fog fortunately lifted, and we discovered that they had crept within 150 yards of the trenches. A few rounds of case shot and some volleys from the Martini-Henrys, and they turned and fled, the Fingoes and Carrington's Horse after them, Carrington leading the way with a revolver and a stick about two hundred yards ahead of every one else; these weapons he evidently considered good enough for chasing niggers with. In June Inspector Nisbett made a most dashing capture of the

stronghold of the Griquas in Victoria West, taking several thousand head of cattle, and utterly routing the enemy, who outnumbered him about four to one.

Early in 1879 the Frontier Armed Mounted Police became the Cape Mounted Rifles, a change which, however, in its immediate practical effect was attended by some friction. Major Garrett Moore was appointed the first commandant, but the fact that the change was made—so the men considered—without due consideration for the terms on which they had originally enlisted, made his position no easy one. "More than two-thirds of the regiment demanded their discharge," signs of insubordination were of ominous occurrence, and Major Moore resigned, being succeeded by Colonel Bayley, through whose exertions the dissatisfaction of the men was quieted. The author of the work we have before quoted gives it as his opinion that the "Cape Mounted Rifles date their birthday as a corps from the appointment of Colonel Bayley. Through his exertions the corps has been brought into the efficient order in which it is at the present time. His first step was to secure the retirement of a good many of the old officers, and promote others from the ranks who had shown special aptitude for the position."

Another "little war" now became imminent. The chief Morosi, who had, since the days of 1853, lived in amity with the British Government, was urged by his sons to lead the Basutos once more against us. The occasion was the collection of a tax which the resident magistrate, a Mr. Austen, very properly exacted. Dodo, Morosi's son, instigated the people to refuse payment, and forcibly released those whose contumacy had been punished by imprisonment. A body of fifty Cape Mounted Rifles was ordered to the spot and punished the rebels severely, but by this time hostilities on a large scale were inevitable. Morosi entrenched himself in a position of extreme strength called "Morosi's Mountain," which for some time past he had been fortifying. Three troops of the Cape Mounted Rifles, with whom were some Cape Yeomanry, attempted to dislodge him, but their force was by far too small and they were repulsed. The action, however, was not without its compensations for the Rifles, as it provided the opportunity for one of their number, Surgeon-Major Hartley, to gain the Victoria Cross. The official notification is to the effect that the coveted decoration was awarded "for conspicuous gallantry displayed by him in attending the wounded under fire at the attack on Morosi's Mountain on the 5th June, 1879, and for having proceeded to the open ground under a heavy fire, and carried in his arms from an exposed position Corporal A. Jones of the Cape Mounted Rifles, who was wounded. While conducting him to a place of safety, the corporal was again wounded. The Surgeon-Major then

returned under the severe fire of the enemy in order to dress the wounds of other men of the storming party." From the history of the war we obtain a graphic description of another attempt upon this stronghold, which, though again unsuccessful, reflected renewed credit upon the gallant Rifles.

The attack was arranged to take place for July, the troops in the meantime being reinforced by Burghers, a contingent of Hottentots, and another troop of C.M.R. "The day before the attack a sergeant of artillery\* and seven men volunteered to creep up at night and throw in shell with lighted fuzes over the schanzes to drive the enemy's sharpshooters out, and enable the storming party to get over the schanzes. They were to creep up at night, and then lie under the schanzes until the storming party was ready to advance. They all succeeded in getting up safely, and lay down right underneath the wall waiting for daylight.

"When the advance was sounded, Sergeant Scott and his party threw two shells over the schanzes, the third burst in his hand, shattering it and severely wounding him and three others of the party. The C.M.R. charged and got possession of the first schanze, shooting a few of the enemy," but with the exception of a few of the Yeomanry and Burghers, who gallantly supported them, they were unaided in their efforts.

The loss was heavy on our side, Captain Surmon of the C.M.R. was shot through the lungs, and about thirty-four were killed and wounded, while the loss of the enemy was insignificant.

Sergeant Scott gained the Victoria Cross, as, too, did Trooper Peter Brown, who, while waiting for the order to advance, "heard two men who had been wounded some time previously crying out for water. He carried a water bottle to these men, under a heavy fire, to an adjacent rock where they had crept for shelter. Whilst giving the first man water he was wounded in the right thigh, and immediately afterwards a bullet shattered his right arm, the use of which he never recovered." Another brave, but disastrous attempt, resulted in further loss to the Rifles. "One was wounded and taken prisoner. Next morning his head was seen on a pole on the summit of the mountain, and a few hours after his body was flung over the outer wall."

A few months later another and better organized attack was made on the Mountain. Colonel Bayley was in command of the Rifles, and determined to achieve the task with his own men alone, declining the assistance of some hastily-organized troops that were present. Before the final assault, however, twenty-five men of the Wodehouse Border-

\* Sergeant Scott.



Guard, under Lieutenant Mulenbeck, and fifty of the loyal Fingoes under "the redoubtable Allan Maclean," joined, making the entire force five hundred, of which a fifth were natives. "It was characteristic of Colonel Bayley that his order began 'Morosi's mountain will be taken to-night by the C.M.R.' &c. Then followed the list of rewards and the disposition of the various troops.

"The attack was to take place at the dip of the moon, which was near midnight, about half-past twelve. Parties of six natives were told off to carry the scaling-ladders, of which there were twenty. The men were to dress as they liked, and to arm themselves in any way they fancied, but all without exception were to carry their carbines and revolvers.

"These orders, with a few more details respecting the time the mortar and big guns were to begin and cease firing, constituted the instructions under which we were to proceed to attack the redoubtable stronghold.

"For four days and nights previous to the attack the mortar had been constantly fired at intervals of ten minutes at night time, and varied intervals in the day, generally leaving off for about four hours to enable the mortar squad to obtain a little rest.

"The mortar was worked by the same squad all through this time, and we were beginning to be thoroughly knocked up. The guns were to fire at intervals during the day preceding the attack, and both guns and mortar were to cease firing at twelve at night. The attempt to get on the mountain was to be made by scaling ladders up the fissure called Bourne's Crack, which I have described, and the krantz immediately surrounding it. Then officers were told off to lead the storming parties at these several points. During the day previous to the attack twenty-five men of a force called the Wodehouse Border-Guard, under Lieutenant Mulenbeck, and fifty Fingoes under Captain Hook, the magistrate at Herschel, and Allan Maclean, arrived. The whole force to attack the mountain numbered between 350 and 400 white men, and about 100 natives." The signal for the assault was to be three rockets, which were to be sent off in the darkest hours of the morning, a time when, according to the old Duke's famous criticism, that highest of all courage, "three o'clock in the morning courage," was emphatically called into play. From the account of an eye-witness we gather the following description:—

"The rockets went up, and the storming party placed their ladders and commenced climbing up. Lieutenant Springer of No. 3 Troop planted his ladder to the right of Bourne's Crack, and with his men climbed up. When near the top, a native put his head over the krantz and said to him in Dutch, 'Don't come up here or I'll shoot you.'

'Shoot away,' said Springer, and the native looking over exposed too much of his body, and was shot by Springer himself, the bullet from the native grazing the lieutenant's shoulder and going through his shirt.

"These shots aroused the whole mountain, but our men were now fast getting up the ladders, and as it happened the enemy were all in the schanzes, expecting we should attack the same way as hitherto. There was only about thirty of the enemy on this side, and they were speedily shot down. Five minutes after the ladders had been planted 200 men were on the mountain, and helping the remainder up. Mulenbeck, in the meantime, from the saddle had fought his way up with his men, and had reached the fourth schanze, after shooting down the enemy in the previous schanzes, through which and over which we had come.

"The Fingoes had also reached the top of the gully headed by Allan Maclean. The Tambookies had refused to go on, and Captain Hook had marched them back, and they were disarmed by the Artillery and made prisoners. A few minutes after the first 200 men of the storming party were up, the remainder had all been pulled up somehow or other. Nearly all the ladders had broken, owing to the excitement of the men who had crowded on them.

"Nearly all the enemy had by this time come over from the schanzes and the opposite side of the mountain to resist the storming party. Forming in line and cheering heartily, the C.M.R. charged across the flat top of the mountain, driving the enemy in front of them. For a few brief minutes it was hand-to-hand, and then the natives were cut down and shot where they stood, those that escaped only to be driven over the perpendicular sides of the mountain and smashed to pieces in their fall. The C.M.R. were now divided into three parties, and commenced scouring out all the nooks and crannies for Morosi and Dodo.

"Small parties of Basutos were found hidden in various caves, and were immediately brought out and shot; and at last, after several attempts to get inside a cave where Morosi was found to be, he was shot, but Dodo could nowhere be discovered.

"At five o'clock A.M., just as the sun was rising, the Union Jack was hoisted on the top of the highest point of the mountain, and in half-an-hour afterwards Morosi's head was placed on a staff in the centre of our camp, a ghastly warning to all rebels."

But though Morosi's Mountain had fallen the chief Letherodi still found plenty of work for the Cape Mounted Rifles. In September, 1880, twelve hundred men under this native warrior attacked some seventy men of the Cape Mounted Rifles, who under

Colonel Carrington were making a reconnaissance. The natives advanced with all their customary valour. The Rifles beat them off, but in a few days suffered some loss in a skirmish in which three men were killed and Lieutenant Clarke ended his life with a blaze of heroism in attempting to rescue a wounded private. Shortly afterwards some two hundred of the Mounted Rifles, still under Colonel Carrington, with whom were about the same number of Native Police, were attacked by some seven thousand of the enemy. The Residency was completely surrounded, and though brilliant sorties by the garrison drove them backward, the result was that the latter were cut off from all communication with the other Imperial troops. Fortunately Captain H. S. Montague of the Rifles was able to effect at considerable risk to himself a communication with them, and in the ensuing month the Rifles achieved a brilliant and decisive victory at Mafetent, to the relief of which Colonel Clarke had marched. The position of the Rifles at this period was that one wing under Colonel Carrington was in garrison at Mafetent, while the other under Colonel Bayley, their own commander, was at Maseru. The latter had some fierce fighting and Carrington forced the enemy into an engagement at the Golah Mountain. And now rebellion grew apace. At Untata Major Elliott held his own against hordes of ferocious savages, the few men at his disposal being commanded by an ex-sergeant of the Rifles. A party of the regiment fortunately arrived, and, so high was the opinion held of the regiment, the threatened post was then considered safe. Space fails us to enumerate the various occasions in which the Cape Mounted Rifles fought and fought well till, for a time, our savage foes realised that submission was their only hope. So closed for a brief space the definite warfare in this part of South Africa, so far as the Cape Mounted Rifles were concerned, the greater part of their share in the ensuing campaign consisting of the defence of various frontier positions.

It must not, however, be imagined that any actual line of demarcation between the various phases of the South African War can be made with any approach to accuracy. During the greater part of the struggles with the natives the Boers had been holding sullenly aloof. They had, they considered, a grievance, and not even the representations that were made to them that the whole European Colony was in danger could induce them to quit their intention to take "further measures for regaining the independence of the people or to throw in their lot even for a time with the Imperial Government." Undoubtedly there were some who took a larger view. The services of the Boer Contingent with Sir Evelyn Wood's column were deserving of nothing but praise; it is not too much to say that the touching and heroic death of Piet Uys counteracted to a very great

extent the intensely bitter feeling which subsequently actuated the British. It will, however, simplify our narrative of the War, and consequently of the military forces of the Colony, if we separate entirely the Transvaal or Boer War from the Zulu, Kaffir, and Basuto Campaigns.

As has been before intimated the dates of formation of the various volunteer regiments at present in existence preclude the possibility of their individual participation in the campaign, with the exceptions that will duly appear. But the present volunteer regiments are made of the same material which supplied those corps whose names still linger as household words through the length and breadth of South Africa. In many cases, too, the *personnel* of the regiments of to-day is strongly leavened by officers and men who played their part throughout those stirring scenes in one or other of the famous corps of Irregulars and Volunteers now disbanded. In many cases again it is but the name which has changed, and the present corps can practically claim a continuity of existence to those whose titles become familiar to all students of the history of the period. Inasmuch then as our space forbids us to dwell at any length on the career of the various regiments now constituting the volunteer force of Cape Colony and Natal, even if under the circumstances mentioned the *official* career presented more incidents of interest than from the present organization it possibly can present, we shall best achieve our object in sketching the history of the South African forces if we refer to those episodes of the War in which the volunteers of the time were concerned.

Amongst the names which we continually meet in perusing its chequered story are Carrington's or the Frontier Light Horse, Nourse's Horse, Ferreira's Horse, Bettington's Horse, Methuen's Horse, Lonsdale's Horse, D'Arcy's Horse, Gough's Horse, and various mounted rifles, whose names varied from time to time with that of their commanding officer for the time being. The names of these corps are no longer found, but their doings in which the volunteers of to-day may rightly claim a heritage will appear in the following pages.\* From the accounts which have been given to the world by actors in the various scenes of South African warfare, details, more or less accurate, can be gathered of the formation of some of these corps. It must not be understood that the accounts are

\* For a more detailed account of the occurrences of the various campaigns the following works may be consulted: "The Transvaal of To-day," by Aylward; "My Command in South Africa," Sir A. T. Cunningham; "Narrative of Field Operations in the Zulu War;" "Campaigning in South Africa," Montague; "The Transvaal War, 1880-81," Lady Bellairs; "How I Volunteered for the Cape," Fenn; "Story of the Transvaal," Nixon; "Austral-Africa," Mackenzie; "With the Cape Mounted Rifles."

otherwise than reliable, but the frequent change of name, owing to the custom—once common amongst British regiments—of the corps being known by the name of the commander for the time being, causes at first sight some slight apparent confusion.

“The irregulars always reminded one,” writes Tomasson, “of that verse, Parthians and Medes, Elamites and Persians, &c., comprising as they did men of all nationalities; English, Scotch, Irish, Welsh, French, Prussians, Danes, Swedes, Austrians, Norwegians, Italians, Spanish, Australians, Russians, Jews of all nations, Poles, Hungarians, Africanders (English born in Africa), Boers, and Americans. Surely a mixed lot to weld as they were into a perfect whole. . . . Of these nations Danes made the best, and Americanized Irish the worst, soldiers. As Archibald Forbes truly says, they were men of varied antecedents. Discharged soldiers and Varsity men, unfrocked clergyman and sailor, cockney and countryman, cashiered officers of army and navy here rubbed shoulders.” Of the Frontier Light Horse, the oldest irregular corps, the same writer says that they served with distinction through the Gaika and Galeka campaigns, and bore themselves always with courage, and had more *esprit de corps* than the other corps.

Another historian, who also served in their ranks, gives the following account:—

“The Frontier Light Horse was the only cavalry regiment raised by the Imperial Government during the Kaffir War. It was raised by Lieutenant Carrington of the 2-24th regiment, and was three squadrons strong. It was paid, equipped, and rationed by the Imperial Government, and had nothing whatever to do with the Colonial Government, receiving orders only from the Lieutenant-General or from some officer in the regular service. We had no coloured men in the ranks, but our troopers were necessarily of a mixed sort; and like all other regiments we had bad as well as good characters, but I am happy to say the latter predominated. Our ranks contained many young fellows who had filled good positions in society at home. In my humble opinion they did very well to join, as they were fully equipped, mounted, and last, though not least, well rationed free of expense.

“A recruit on joining ours engages for six months’ service, has everything found him, and at the end of his service, if he chooses to re-engage, he can have such articles of outfit as he requires. Our men were all clothed in cotton cord suits (black, red facings), ‘ammunition’ boots and gaiters, and a wide-awake hat—colonially termed a ‘smasher’—with a red puggaree. They were armed with a steel-barrel carbine, slung from the right shoulder, and hanging on the left side. The officers wore a black patrol jacket, tight black Bedford cord pants, with double red stripe, and wore either helmet or ‘smasher’

hat ; arms, revolver and sword. The scale of pay was as follows:—captains, 15s. a day ; lieutenants, 11s. ; regimental sergeant-major, 9s. ; troop sergeant-major, 8s. ; sergeants, 7s. ; corporals, 6s. ; and troopers, 5s. As everything in the way of equipment was found, this pay was very good.

“ Before leaving the subject of the regiment, I should like to draw attention to the fact that the Frontier Light Horse have seen more service than any regiment out there ; I mean, of course, during the late Kaffir disturbances. They took a leading part in the Trans-Kei War, they were then employed during the whole of the Perie Bush War. After that they were ordered to take part in the expedition against Secocœni ; and are now doing valuable service against the Zulus under the command of Colonel Buller, and attached to General Wood’s column.” (Fenn.)

After Colonel Carrington left Captain Whalley took command, and then Colonel Buller ; both officers sharing in the first campaign against Sekukuni.\* Amongst other commanders who have been identified with the Frontier Light Horse may be mentioned Captain MacNaughten (killed in Perie Bush), Barton (Coldstream Guards, killed at Zlobane), Prior (80th regiment), Brunker (26th), Baron von Stiteneron (Austrian Hussars, killed at Zlobane), and many others, including Commandant Cecil D’Arey, V.C.

“ ‘ Baker’s Horse ’ were raised by Captain F. J. Baker, of the Ceylon Rifles, and served through the latter part of the old colony war under that officer. They were then sent to garrison Kokstadt.” The Pondas were supposed to be about to rise, but were checked by the prompt measures taken. After this the regiment marched through Natal and disbanded at Port Elizabeth. A few days afterwards Captain Baker got a telegram from Lord Chelmsford to raise men. This was done with incredible celerity, and in a short space some two hundred and forty men sailed from Port Elizabeth. At Zlobane this corps suffered in common with the other irregulars.

The Natal Light Horse were raised by Captain Watt Whalley, an officer who had seen service in the Mutiny, China and Abyssinia, the Franco-Prussian war, where, as one of the Papal Zouaves, he was dangerously wounded at Mézières and taken prisoner, the Carlist war, the Galeka, Galeka (wounded), Sekukuni and Zulu campaigns. “ Of course, with such a commanding officer, a regiment must be a good one.” In February, 1878, Sekukuni attacked our ally Pok Wana and returned a defiant answer to the remonstrances of the British Commissioner. Volunteers and Police were accordingly directed to attack the stronghold of Masselaroon, and in an encounter which

\* The name of this chieftain is—as is the case with others—spelt differently by different writers.

took place in the following April the Volunteers were repulsed with a loss in killed or wounded of about sixteen. A detachment of the Diamond Fields Horse was next attacked and repulsed, and the need of reinforcements became a crying one. In August Colonel Rowlands, V.C., marched with a column, which included some Frontier Light Horse and Mounted Infantry, against Sekukuni, but with the exception of a brilliant capture of a kraal on the 27th October nothing particular was achieved, and the troops were withdrawn to the Frontiers of Zululand, where war was imminent. When the invasion was determined on the Volunteers were thus located: With the first column under Colonel Pearson were the Durban Mounted Rifles under Captain W. Shepstone; the Victoria Rifles under Captain Sauer; the Stanger Rifles under Captain Addison; the Alexandra Rifles under Captain Arbutnot; and the Natal Hussars under Captain Norton.

In the column under Colonel Glyn were the Natal Mounted Police under Major Dartnell, the Natal Carabineers under Shepstone, the Buffalo Border Guard under Roxham, and the Newcastle Mounted Rifles under Bradstreet. In Evelyn Wood's column were the Frontier Light Horse under Buller, and the Kaffrarian Rifles, a corps raised from the survivors or descendants of the old German Legion who had settled there after the Crimea, under Commandant Sehermbrucker. On the 22nd January was fought the battle of Inyezane, in which Pearson's column gained a distinct victory. Colonel Glyn's column, meanwhile, with which was Lord Chelmsford, had encamped at Rorke's Drift, and on the 20th January the column, with the exception of three companies of the 24th, marched to the fated hill of Isandhlwana. On the 21st, Major Dartnell, with the Natal Mounted Police and Volunteers, started on a reconnoitring expedition, and were subsequently joined by Lord Chelmsford.

There were left under Colonel Puleine, besides the Regulars, some eighty Mounted Volunteers and Police, of whom the great number were Natal Carabineers, and some of the Native Contingent. The story of Isandhlwana has been often before told, but not so familiar is the part the Natal Volunteers played in that drama of death and heroism. When the question of calling out the volunteer forces was first mooted in earnest, the Carabineers had been amongst the first.

“By rights these boys—for boys the greater part of them were—could only be called on to serve within the limits of the colony, and for defensive purposes. Should they insist on their right? There was not a boy among them all who did not sign his name to a declaration expressing his willingness to go beyond the limits of the colony, should the duty be required of them. Alas! they were signing away their lives.

“And so, when they marched out of the city, the little troop of some five and forty, with the military band at their head, and the crowd marching with them for a mile of the route, there was anxiety, but no apprehension. They were the Natal Carabineers, the heroes of the affair at Bushman's Pass in 1873. They were going to redeem their reputation, and to fight, if fighting indeed should be necessary, under the eye of Lord Chelmsford himself.

“For they were no of the commoner sort, these boys. Their families were in many cases of the best blood of the colony, who were not ashamed that their sons should serve as privates in the ranks of the Carabineers.

“There never was a calmer, brighter summer dawn than there was in Natal that day. The whole thing is at this moment as distinct as if it were only yesterday. The dim feeling of undefined awe, when it was whispered that news had been brought of the disaster. Then the questions hurriedly asked of the highest colonial official obtainable; the answer, ‘The news is just as bad as it can be.’ The question as to who was known to be killed; the reply again, ‘Durnford's killed for certain, and Scott, and at least half the Carabineers.’

“Durnford was there, indeed, still plainly recognisable, with Scott close beside him, and the boys of the Carabineers lying dead all round. It was they who had made that last rally, in the vain hope of stemming the rush of Zulu warriors, and gaining time for at least more fugitives to escape.”

Though not perhaps strictly relative to the Colonial Forces now under consideration, we may be pardoned quoting an incident which reflected the highest credit on the Natal Native Horse, a useful corps which on this occasion rendered splendid service.

“When on that fatal day of Isandhlwana, the broken line of fugitives sought the drift over the Buffalo River, which will now for ever be called after their name; when they came down breathless, with the enemy around them and on their heels, doubting whether they had strength enough left to make a last fight for life by plunging into the rapidly running stream; as they paused and looked round and upward, measuring the distance of the advancing foe, and the width of the river that lay between them and the comparative safety of the Natal shore—while they thus paused and wondered, there came the sharp report of rifles from the opposite bank.

“Was it a signal of life or of death? Had the Zulus got across and intercepted their retreat? or was there a British detachment providentially in the way covering their escape?”



"No, they were not British troops, they were not even a colonial force. The men whose rifles they heard were as black as the Zulus themselves, but they were not Zulus, for they wore a rough uniform and broad-brimmed hats, and carried their cartridges in a belt over their shoulders. There they stood by their shaggy little ponies, firing steadily across the river at the advancing swarm of Cetywayo's warriors. There was a Zulu down; there was another. There was a check, a pause, a few moments more allowed for a dash into the river, for a struggle to the other side, a hasty climb up to where the little band of sable horsemen, each with only a few cartridges left in his belt, still stood facing the enemy.

"There were not many for whom even such a respite as this was obtainable. But none the less admirable was the conduct of the troop of native horse, who, with no European leader left to direct them, thus delayed their own retreat to save what they could of the remnant of the ill-fated force left in Lord Chelmsford's camp.

"Who were these men? They were the Natal Native Horse—a force some sixty strong, raised by Colonel Durnford from among the residents of the native settlements of Edendale, near Maritzburg. First of all attached to Colonel Durnford's almost purely native command, they accompanied him to Lord Chelmsford's camp, when, on that memorable morning, he was ordered up from the drift across the Buffalo River to reinforce the detachments left in camp. Taking part in the action that preceded the destruction of the camp and its gallant defenders, they were so far outside the main body of the Zulus as to be able to cut their way through and escape, losing only two or three of their number. Returning to their homes in the first instance, they volunteered immediately again for active service, passing through the whole of the rest of the campaign with the utmost credit."

When the tidings of Isandhlwana reached Pearson he immediately fortified Etchowe, while Colonel Wood's column, after various slight skirmishes, occupied Fort Tuita. In the defence of Etchowe and the various raids with which the monotony of its blockade was broken, and in its relief by Lord Chelmsford the Volunteers were engaged. Meanwhile the column under Evelyn Wood had on the 31st January formed an intrenched camp at a place called Kambula Hill, and no sooner were they arrived, than Colonel Evelyn Wood determined to make an attack on the enemy's stores at the Baglasini kraal. The troops selected for this service were the "dashing Frontier Horse" under Buller, and some of the Dutch troop of Piet Uys. The kraal was some thirty miles distant from the camp, and in a position which made its attack one of difficulty and danger. Buller,

however, managed to conceal his approach, till almost within striking distance. "After exchanging a few shots, the troopers made a headlong dash at the kraal, which was captured almost without resistance." Then gathering the cattle, which numbered some four hundred, into one great herd, they drove off with them in triumph, in the face of a considerable number of the enemy who, however, seemed too alarmed to offer any opposition.

Another very dashing piece of work was the destruction of a kraal belonging to the powerful chief Manyanyova, and in this again the Volunteers highly distinguished themselves. The force detailed for the attack consisted of thirteen of the Frontier Light Horse, fifty of Piet Uys' men, eight of the Kaffrarian Rifles, and some Irregulars and natives. They started about midnight, and directly the sun arose were sufficiently near to shell the enemy's position. The surprise did not, however, prevent the Zulus opening fire, though our losses were fortunately limited to six killed and wounded. Another band of Volunteers was meanwhile engaged in some brisk fighting under Colonel Rowlands, and so with varied fortunes the weeks passed by till, towards the end of March, the contingent under Wood received instructions to hold themselves ready for a demonstration in force. The fight that ensued is known as the Battle of Inhlobane, or, as Asho calls it, Zlobani, and is memorable for the severeness of the fighting, the heavy loss amongst the officers of the Volunteers, and the many acts of heroism which were performed. The force selected for the expedition, excluding the Imperial troops, was composed of a hundred and twenty-five troopers of the Frontier Light Horse, fifty each of the contingents of Raaf and Piet Uys, forty troopers of Schermbrucker's Horse, and double that number of Weatherley's Border Horse, commanded by Colonel Weatherley himself, who formerly had borne a commission in the Inniskillings. The whole party numbered four hundred and ninety-five sabres, every one being a good swordsman and picked marksman. Early in the morning of the 27th March they started, Buller, Weatherley, and Piet Uys, with their men, being considerably in advance. When they halted for the night, intelligence reached them that the Zulus were approaching in great force, no fewer than seven native regiments, under chiefs of rank, being reported to be in the neighbourhood. To retreat would involve leaving the advance guard to the mercy of the overpowering foe, and it was necessary, therefore, to effect a junction with them at whatever risks. The order to advance was given, and long before dawn the column moved forward, being met shortly by Weatherley's troop, which had missed their way the previous night. Directly morning broke it became evident that

there had been considerable fighting. As soon as the mist cleared away, the head of Buller's column could be seen advancing, and driving before them dense masses of the enemy. Weatherley requested to be allowed to hasten to Buller's assistance, and, permission being granted, rode blithely away with his brave young son to the fight from which neither was ever to return. The path along which they had to pass was terribly difficult, and soon a body of Zulus moved forward with the evident intention of cutting off the little band of horse.

"It would be difficult to describe," writes Ashe, "the marvellously rugged and weird nature of the rocks around, and the ghastly features of the sheer precipices gaping on either side. Killed and wounded horses now were seen at every turn of the road, showing how stoutly the enemy must have held their ground, and how difficult an operation Buller had performed. Sending fifty men round to work on our right flank and to endeavour to take the Zulus in the rear, Colonel Wood kept his men for a few moments under cover of a friendly ledge of rocks to look to their rifles, girths, and ammunition, and then ascended rapidly to the front, passing the Border Horse who had by this time got off the track. The scene was at this moment intensely exciting. The firing was almost continuous, and the yells of the savages were re-echoed back by the loud and heart-stirring cheers of their gallant comrades, who had seen Wood's column coming, and gave them this encouragement,"

The Zulus were skirmishing amongst the strange caves which honeycombed the mountain sides, and from which they were able, with comparative impunity, to pour a devastating fire upon the Colonial troops. Captain von Sleitenkvon, lieutenant in the Frontier Horse, was shot; not long after fell Llewellyn Lloyd, shot through the head as he dashed forward to cut down a Zulu who had fired at Colonel Wood. The shot that killed him passed first through the Colonel's sleeve. And now the enemy was retiring, while Weatherley was harassing their left rear, but a terrible change was effected in the position by the approach of the great Ulundi army. A retreat was ordered, but skilful and orderly as it was, it could not be effected without the most desperate fighting and severe loss. "The enemy had massed themselves on three sides of the mountain, and only one terribly steep path was left to descend. This was thoroughly blocked by the Zulus, who, under cover, rained bullets and assegais upon these devoted men, and then, when the moment came for close fighting, dashed in dense masses upon their thinned and weakened files." Thanks to Buller's splendid soldiery many of his men successfully effected the retreat, but when at last the

camp at Kumbula was reached, the indefatigable Buller rode off to try to succour the Border Horse, whom Barton had joined. It was owing to this gallant ride through the gloomy night and torrents of blinding rain, that any of Barton's force escaped. He himself had fallen fighting gallantly; fallen too, had Piet Uys—"splendid, manly, honest, simple, and taciturn Piet Uys—whose father, uncles, and cousins, fought and fell in the old wars of Dingaan." It was remembered, when his death was known, how but the evening before he had spoken tenderly of his children, and bespoken for them in the event of his death the protection of Colonel Wood; and men compared the memory of him as he spoke thus with the accounts of how he had fallen with his back to the cliff, standing across the body of his favourite horse, six Zulus lying dead before him, and with two assegais quivering in his body, while his nerveless hand grasped an empty revolver. There were eighty gallant troopers who had followed Weatherley into action that day. Of these more than half were killed, and amongst them were their brave commander and his son. We cannot refrain from quoting here the pathetic account given by Major Ashe, of the death of the Colonel, who may indeed be taken—despite his previous Imperial service—as a representative type of those splendid soldiers whose names are associated with Colonial Volunteer Cavalry. "Nothing could be more sad than Weatherley's death. At the fatal hour when all save honour seemed lost he placed his beloved boy upon his best horse, and kissing him on the forehead commended him to another Father's care above, and implored him to overtake the nearest column of the English, which seemed at that time to be cutting its way out. The boy clung to his father, and begged to be allowed to stay by his side and share his life or death. The contrast was characteristic. The man, a bearded, bronzed, and hardy *sabreur*, with a father's tears upon his cheek, while the blue-eyed and fair-haired lad, with much of the beauty of a girl in his appearance, was calmly and with a smile of fond delight, loading his father's favourite carbine. When the two noble hearts were last seen, the father, wounded to death with cruel assegais, was clasping his boy's hand with his left, while the right cut down the brawny savages who came to despoil him of his charge."

Terrible indeed had been the slaughter that day. Over a hundred—of whom sixteen were officers—had been killed and wounded on our side, but for every one of these gallant spirits thirty Zulus had bitten the dust. Mention has before been made, in connection with other regiments, of the Victoria Crosses which were won by Buller and Leet and Lysons and Fowler on that day, but it may be mentioned here that the act of

gallantry performed by the two former consisted in each case of the rescue of members of the Frontier Light Horse: Major Leet saving Lieutenant Smith, and Redvers Buller rescuing Captain D'Arey, Lieutenant Everitt, and a trooper, all of whom were dismounted and would have fallen an easy prey to the advancing enemy.

As was to be expected, the Zulus determined to make an attack upon the camp at Kambula, and this they did in force, their number being estimated at twenty-five thousand men. Space will not permit us to dwell at length on the brilliant repulse which our little band of two thousand men inflicted on this formidable host; we must content ourselves with recording that the Colonial troops bravely acquitted themselves and suffered but slight loss. But as every incident connected with the Colonial troops is valuable in aiding towards a just appreciation of their value, we cannot pass unnoticed the adventures of a trooper named Gandier, one of the devoted band of Weatherley's Border Horse, who had been taken prisoner in the Battle of Inhlobano and who not long after made his appearance in the camp. Like many of his comrades Gandier was a Frenchman, and after fighting gallantly in the terrible rush in which Colonel Weatherley met his death, was dragged, wounded as he was, beaten, bruised and footsore to the kraal where Umbelini held his savage court. He was interrogated closely and persistently as to the strength and movements of the British, but declined to answer. Then, though expecting immediate death, he was remanded till the next day. "A circle was formed round the unfortunate prisoner, who was firmly bound with thongs of raw hide to a stout tree in the centre, while round and round the youngest of the warriors danced, chanting a melancholy dirge, and keeping time upon his naked body with the butt ends of their stabbing assegais." Once again did he nerve himself for the expected torture and death, and once again was he respited to be sent a prisoner to Cetywayo. He was stripped naked and made to carry his escort's food; for four days, denuded of everything but a hat and a pocket-handkerchief, which he bound round his loins, he was compelled to keep pace with the rapid march of his guard. Barefooted, black and blue with bruises, suffering from exposure and almost from starvation, bound at night to thorn bushes, his only nourishment a small handful of green mealies, the gallant trooper of Weatherley's horse still bore up. When he reached the king's kraal his lot was even worse. Finding that he was not to be seduced from loyalty by the offer of wives and cattle and land, his captor confined him in a hut, where "bound each night with painfully tight thongs he was watched by relays of old women, hideous hags whose amusement was to tear out his hair and stick pins into him whenever he endeavoured to

sleep. In the daytime during eight days he was regularly tied to a tree and beaten by assegais by every warrior whose fancy it was to pass that way." At last when tidings came of the defeat of the Zulus at Kambula he was ordered to be taken back to Umbelini's kraal, and there sacrificed. Fortunately his escort was only two, and despite his terrible pain and exhaustion, Gandier determined to make a dash for liberty. Watching his opportunity he took the assegai from one of his guards, struck him to the heart, and seizing his musket, confronted his amazed comrade, who thereupon fled. After wandering about for two nights and days he fortunately met some of Raaf's force, and was carried back to Wood's camp.

Meanwhile the Frontier Light Horse at Kambula had been largely reinforced, and other welcome additions were made to the garrison. Numerous reconnaissances were made, and the records of the campaign are eloquent in praise of the invaluable service rendered by the Colonial forces. Kambula was exchanged for a strong position at Maze-gwhana, and on the 5th May the C Troop of Lonsdale's Horse under Captain Hampden Whalley and some of De Burgh's troopers had a sharp encounter with a strong force of the enemy who attacked a convoy. The position of the Colonial Forces was about this time somewhat re-arranged in view of the contemplated advance, and it would occupy too much space to follow each change in detail.

The principal localities where they were stationed were Conference Hill, Maze-gwhana, Doornkop, and Landsman's Drift. Some Natal Volunteers were with Captain Lucas at Thring's Post, while the Natal Police and Carabineers held Helpmakaar. Two or three important reconnaissances were made towards Isandhlwana, in which the Frontier Light Horse, under D'Arcy and Blaine, Baker's Horse, and the Natal Native Cavalry under Cochrane took part. On the 5th June, General Marshall, having effected a junction with Buller's men, had a smart engagement with the enemy. The order of advance of Colonial troopers was, "Frontier Light Horse the centre, Buller's Horse the left, Whalley's the right," and though the bulk of the subsequent fighting fell to the share of the regulars, the position of Buller's men was at times critical. On the 20th of the same month a troop of Buller's Horse had another skirmish with some seven hundred of the enemy, inflicting considerable loss without damage to themselves. On the 3rd July, a very brilliant raid was made across the Umvolosi by the Frontier Light Horse, Whalley's, and the Rangers under Raaf, in fact, all that was servicable of the Irregular Horse after a long and arduous campaign.

"The enemy poured in another volley, three men were dismounted; to one of them

the Adjutant of the Light Horse gave his horse, the fellow immediately rode off, and left his preserver in the plain; the Adjutant had extreme difficulty in escaping of course; the man he saved, and who treated him so badly, was a German. The Zulus were advancing rapidly, yet Lord William Beresford turned his horse's head and rode back, resolved to save life or lose his own. The man he went to rescue was a huge trooper of the Light Horse, his horse was shot, and he himself was giddy with pain. Here took place the scene which everyone in England knows of. On reaching him Lord William ordered him to mount behind him; the man either did not hear, or did not understand, and hesitated; Lord William jumped off his own horse, and told him if he did not mount he would punch his head; with difficulty the man obeyed and mounted behind him, and thus they rode off. All this took place while the Zulus were racing over the one hundred and fifty yards that separated them from the pair."

In the somewhat hurried retreat which their daring advance necessitated Captain D'Arcy most gallantly risked his life in trying to save a dismounted trooper. Though he failed the action was recognised as well deserving the Victoria Cross, and the attempt resulted in a painful contusion to the gallant captain.

In the famous advance on Ulundi the Colonial Horse were stationed on the front and flanks, and had plenty of opportunity of again proving their value, fighting their way repeatedly through surrounding swarms of the enemy, and being the first to enter the captured kraal.

The account given by Tomasson of the part played in this important movement by the Irregular Horse deserves quoting. "Very pretty the square seemed, lying there so motionless and still in the morning sun. How soon is the change to be made, and the whole face of it flash and grow pale with the volleys and smoke. Already the Artillery are at it hard, and the shells scream over our heads as we ride for the square.

"Within, all is busy and stern. The artillerymen are standing to their guns, the infantry ready, and the cavalry standing by their horses. Down comes the advancing rush of Zulus, and now the musketry fire opens, and the leaden hail sweeps the ground. By Jove, how can any living thing stand before that awful fire? Overhead the bullets are screaming hoarsely, each with a different note; the sharper ring of the Martini plainly to be told from the duller sound of the Snider. The rough cast bullets of the Enfields and long Elephant guns sing a regular pæan, while the potlegs and wire literally howl in their course. If we are to be hit to-day, let it be with a rifle ball if possible. The unmistakable thud of bullets as they strike horse or man is now often

heard. Horses spring up into the air as they are struck, sometimes crying in their agony."

When at last the battle was practically won, the Irregulars were again called into action. "All the mounted men out," was the order, and in a twinkling they were off and away. "The enemy halt a second, waver, and fly—the battle of Ulundi is over, and the pursuit begins.

"Up into the saddle without a moment's delay, gather up the reins, and pass quickly through the infantry, who have done their work so well; ours is now about to begin. They give us a cheer as they wipe the perspiration that runs down their sunburnt cheeks. The Lancers, who are ahead of us, have already settled down to their work, and are riding hard, with levelled lances, on the fast-retreating foe. We swing round to the right in the direction of the hills, and lose sight of them for the time being.

"Soon we begin to come up with them, and the rifles once more begin to play out. Most of the Zulus on being overtaken turn round and fire, using their assegais immediately afterwards. Our men use their carbines pistol-wise. One has to be careful and ride with a tight rein, as every moment you pass over a body. Some living men are there too, stretched out and hiding in the long grass; they are crouched down and trusting to escape afterwards. We follow up the enemy till they reach the hills, where on the slopes they rally once more, the small bands get together, and turn. A lively little bit of musketry fire takes place, which ends in the enemy retreating again, this time right to the top of the steep hill, up which it would be well nigh impossible to get."

As is well known, the Zulus were experts in savage cunning and trickery. When the Colonial Cavalry were returning to the square, they passed a Zulu, lying to all appearance dead, and beside him two magnificent assegais and a gun. On the principle of the "spoils to the victors," Captain Baker proposed to appropriate these, and turning to a trooper bade him "Jump down and get those for me." The moment a hand was laid on the assegais, the Zulu sprang up, seized his gun, and fired, fortunately missing his mark, though he killed Lieutenant Addie's horse.

With Ulundi the most important phase of the Zulu War may be said to have terminated, and many of the Volunteers who had fought so well were disbanded.

When the columns under Clarke and Russell were formed for the final subjugation of the country, the 1st Natal Horse (De Burgh) and two troops of Lonsdale's Horse (Lumley) were assigned to the former; while another troop of Lonsdale's, the Frontier Light Horse (D'Arcy), the Transvaal Rangers (Raaf), and the Natal Mounted Police



(Mansell) were with Russell. Pietermaritzburg had its own force, of which the principal corps were the Carabineers, the Rifles, and the City Guard. The subsequent operations against Sekukuni, in which the Mounted Rifles, the Border Horse, Ferreira's Horse, and other Volunteers played an important part, and in which Carrington added to the sheaf of honours he had already reaped, have been before glanced at, and we can only notice here that amongst the casualties which we had to deplore before the opposition was crushed were the deaths of Captain Macauley of the Transvaal Mounted Rifles, Captain MacCorbie of Baker's Horse, and Captain Beeton of the Native Contingent.

We now pass in our rapid survey of the history of the Colonial forces to the Transvaal War, in which our opponents were no longer natives but Europeans. Into the causes which led to that war it is not our province to enter, but it is necessary to record as an historical fact, the active and abiding influence of the intensely bitter feelings which, alike in its inception, its conduct, and its termination, it evoked. It is doubtless possible in chronicling the occurrences of that time to say, in all honesty, of the statesmen responsible, that—

“They are wise and honourable,  
And will, no doubt, with reasons answer us ;”

but the hideous fact remains that upon none of the crimsoned battle-fields, which occupy so large a share in the panorama of our history, does the memory rest with shame, save upon those dismal fields, from the reeking soil of which rises, mocking and defiant, the fatal hill of Majuba. It is impossible to read any account, however prosaic and passionless, of the episodes of that war without being convinced that, rightly or wrongly, our Colonial fellow-subjects, and a vast majority of ourselves, felt that the foes who heaped disgrace and contumely upon the British flag were powers in high places, even those of our own household.

It was at once obvious that volunteering for a war with the Boers was a somewhat different matter from volunteering for one with the natives. Sir Owen Lanyon remarked upon “the difficulty which the Government would experience in obtaining support from the loyal inhabitants,” and added his conviction that “little can be expected from them in this direction,” and that “owing to the circumstances in which this province was annexed, and the fact that all the people are mixed up with and dependent on the Boers, in trade and other pursuits, it is impossible that the

Government can rely upon them for that material assistance which might be expected in other places." "Praiseworthy efforts were, however, made by some of the leading inhabitants to raise corps of Volunteers, which formed the nuclei of what, later on, became known as the Pretoria Carabineers, Nourse's Horse, the Pretoria Rifles, and the Volunteer Artillery. From 150 to 200 men were thus enrolled, a portion of whom under drill instructors furnished by the garrison, or some few of themselves who had already gone through their novitiate in arms, might be seen each evening, during the fortnight preceding hostilities, intent on qualifying themselves to take their part in the coming tug of war." The following account from a trustworthy authority will give an idea of the constitution of these forces:—

The Pretoria Carabineers and Nourse's Horse—the former consisting of about one hundred and the latter of sixty horses, reduced as time went on, and the ravages of war and disease had had their effect—were most useful corps. They took the lead in all the attacks, and by their efficient daily scouting and patrolling for miles around, afforded security to the town, and gained grazing space for the cattle. Their casualties were more numerous and serious in consequence, in proportion to numbers, than other bodies—about fifteen per cent. Three commanders of the Carabineers—D'Arcy, Anderson, and Sanctuary—were successively placed *hors de combat*.

Captain Nourse raised the corps bearing his name; but falling sick early in the investment, he was succeeded in the command by Captain Sampson, who was wounded at the attack on Zwart Kopje.

The Transvaal Artillery—about a score of men, under the command of Lieutenant F. Stiemens, first clerk to the Colonial Secretary—worked a gun placed in the south-east bastion of the Jail Laager, and occasionally did service with the cattle-guards, &c.

The Pretoria Rifles numbered about 400 men. The additional material did not seem at first very promising, but by dint of a few weeks' incessant drill, sharp discipline, and rifle practice under its energetic commander—Major Le Mesurier, assisted by his adjutant, Lieutenant Cleoté, a barrister-at-law, and the company's officers—the corps soon presented a respectable appearance, and took its share of hard work. The defence of the Convent Redoubt and the Jail Laager was confided to it and the Transvaal Artillery.

In addition to these the townspeople at Standerton raised thirteen mounted and twenty-one foot volunteers for the defence of the town. These men were armed by Captain Froom, and formed the nucleus of a body of Volunteers—afterwards numbering seventy-five men—which performed excellent service.

At Wakkerstroom Captain Saunders offered to furnish thirty soldiers for the defence of the town, provided a similar number of Volunteers would join them. More than that number having given in their names, a picket of an officer and thirty-three men were sent to occupy the Court-House, which was then placed in a state of defence.

Five shillings a day was fixed as the rate of pay for each Volunteer private, in addition to rations, which latter, however, were given free to all civilians, women and children included. Those employed as artisans in skilled labour—saddlers, blacksmiths, carpenters, bricklayers, &c.—received some further small allowances.

It was doubted at first by many that the Boers really meant fighting. The whole thing seemed so preposterous; from the British point of view it seemed inconceivable that Europeans, who owed to us their salvation from the vengeful fury of the natives, should take this opportunity to repudiate, *vi et armis*, an annexation which was undoubtedly ardently desired by many of them. But on the 18th December the news became known in Pretoria that the Republic had been proclaimed. A graphic account of the arrival of the startling intelligence is given by Mr. Duval. "The next day, 18th December, the last mail-cart arrived; the post-bags were seized by the Boers at Heidelberg, but the passengers, an Irishman named Clarke and his two daughters, intending settlers in the Transvaal, were allowed to go through unmolested. One of these young girls, with great readiness and courage, had managed to secrete the dispatches for the Administrator in the bosom of her dress, and thus carried them safely to Pretoria, though her modesty suggested their being transferred to her hat before her arrival at Government House; and when the facts of how the last Governmental dispatches were brought to the Transvaal capital come to be known, perhaps Miss Clarke will receive the meed of praise her fidelity and bravery deserve. The story of these travellers was simple. Heidelberg was occupied by the Boers in force, was being fortified, the Republic was declared; but it awakened the people of Pretoria to the gravity of the situation, and horse and foot Volunteers began to enrol with some semblance of organization and system. Defensive works progressed, stores were converted into temporary fortifications, loopholed and barricaded, private houses and public offices shared the same fate, and an earthwork was rapidly projected around the old Dutch church, in the centre of the market square."

Two days later came the attack on the 94th under the brave Anstruther, the details of which have been given in the account of that regiment; before long an attack was

made on Potchefstroom, in which Major Clarke and Commandant Raaf were taken, and a strong force invested Pretoria, forcing the garrison to occupy the fort.

"The fighting strength of the garrison," writes Nixon, "consisted of four companies of the 2-21st regiment, known as the Royal Scots Fusiliers, one company of the 4th, a few artillerymen, and a few mounted infantry. The mounted Volunteers comprised the Pretoria Carabineers, or D'Arcy's Horse, as they were called after their leader, Commandant D'Arcy; a body of mounted infantry about 130 strong, and a second body of mounted infantry under the command of Captain Nourse, known as Nourse's Horse, numbering about 70. The mounted infantry volunteers formed the pick of our defenders, and represented the best of the youth of Pretoria. They behaved pluckily throughout the war; the Pretoria Carabineers, in particular, lost one in four of their number, either killed or wounded, during the war. The Volunteers were clothed in neutral-coloured suits, with a bandolier full of cartridges over the shoulder, and each man carried a rifle." It is proverbial that onlookers see most of what goes on, be it in love, sport, or war, and to one of these we are indebted for an account of the steps that were taken to supplement the military strength. It is, moreover, valuable as throwing a light on the characteristics of one of the most popular of the Colonial corps. "The nucleus of a few troops and companies was soon formed; a mounted corps, 'The Pretoria Carabineers,' of whom I shall often subsequently have to speak, being raised under the leadership of Mr. R. H. K. D'Arcy, a former magistrate of Kimberley, and a jolly good fellow withal. The possession of something to ride was a necessity to enable volunteers to join 'D'Arcy's Horse.'" Later on he remarks that, despite the difficulties which existed, D'Arcy's Horse paraded some forty or fifty strong, and executed a little skirmishing drill and other simple evolutions to the evident satisfaction of Sir Owen Lanyon, the Administrator, Colonel Bellairs, C.B., and Lieutenant-Colonel Gildea, of the Royal Scots Fusiliers. "There were also about 450 infantry Volunteers, divided into five companies, under the command of Major Le Mesurier, R.E. Altogether, the total number of troops, including the staff, the band of the 2-21st, and the commissariat and ordnance, must have been about a thousand. The civilians in the camp and at the Convent Laager, not actually in military service, numbered about 4,000."

And so, drearily and anxiously, Christmas drew on. Defences were erected and strengthened, supplies and rations estimated and apportioned. All devices that cheery courage and good soldiership could suggest were adopted to lighten the burden of

anxious monotony. Without were an implacable foe, to whom rumour had already ascribed treachery and cruelty; within were regulars and volunteers, working hard to perfect themselves before the time of actual hand-to-hand conflict should come.

“Christmas! our women all anxiously dreading;  
 Christmas! our men with arms in their hands;  
 Christmas! our children now curiously treading  
 The ‘langer’ constructed by soldierly bands;  
 Christmas! awaiting the call to the battle;  
 Christmas! bedraggled and dabbled in mud;  
 Christmas! enlivened by musketry’s rattle;  
 Christmas! all stained by our countrymen’s blood.”

So wrote the journalist of the beleaguered garrison, and the description owes scarcely anything to poetic licence.

On the 28th December the first skirmish took place. On the morning of that day, a mounted patrol of 50 men having been sent, under Lieutenant O’Grady of the 94th regiment, with whom was Lieutenant Williams of the Carabineers, to reconnoitre the country from the east to the south side, met with the enemy in force, and had a brisk skirmish near the Six Mile Spruit, on the Heidelberg road. An advanced party of the Volunteers, under Captain Sampson of Nourse’s Horse, becoming aware of the vicinity of a large body, estimated at from 300 to 400 men, quickly retired, but were pursued by 50 Boers, supported by 100 more. When about five hundred yards from the Spruit, the Boers dismounted and fired with effect, wounding two men and some horses. The party then halted, returned the fire, and, taking their wounded with them, continued to retire on their support, which had taken up a strong position on a rocky hill offering good cover, their flank being at the time threatened by another party of Boers. From thence their fire checked the further advance of the Boers, and caused them eventually to fall back.

The following day in another skirmish Captain D’Arey and three other Volunteers were wounded. On the 6th January the Carabineers were again in action, taking part in the Zwart Kopije affair. They were commanded by Captain Sanctuary, poor D’Arey, the Commandant, having had to relinquish the command through his wound. “Nourse’s Horse, under Captain A. W. Sampson, a fine young Colonial, who had previously held an important Government appointment, and who now commanded the ‘blue Puggarees,’\* in place of Nourse, who was invalided;” there were also the 94th

\* Owing to a mistake on one occasion, which might have proved a serious one, “the Carabineers and Nourse’s Horse thenceforth carried red and blue flags respectively to denote their whereabouts in the field.”

Mounted Infantry, under Lieutenant O'Grady, a couple of companies of the Royal Scots Fusiliers, about eighty men of the Pretoria Rifles (Foot Volunteers). The Boers on this occasion adopted their favourite expedient of hoisting a white flag. "Colonel Gildea immediately ordered the 'cease firing' to sound. The regulars sprang to their feet, but the Infantry Volunteers who accompanied the troops, being more acquainted with Boer tactics, remained quiet. Colonel Gildea himself advanced within two hundred yards of the Kopije, and sent a corporal with a flag of truce to speak to the enemy. When the latter got within about sixty feet of the Kopije, the Boers treacherously opened fire on the flag of truce." An advance was ordered, and the Volunteers rushed forward and took the house at the bayonet's point. Five of our men were killed, and fourteen wounded. "There can be no doubt," states Nixon, "that the firing on the flag of truce was intentional." The quasi-official account, so far as it bears on the Volunteers, is as follows:—"The Carabineers were sent ahead to occupy some small hills behind the Zwart Kopije, with orders to remain quiet and intercept the enemy. Unfortunately the Boers got wind of their movements, probably through some treachery in our camp. The 'A' troop of the Carabineers, who occupied a hill within a short distance of the farmhouse, were severely handled. Two were shot dead, and two wounded, and it would have gone hard with them but for the arrival of the main column. One of the Volunteers described the fire of the Boers to me as a great deal too close to be pleasant. He and his comrades lay behind some rocks, and the moment they showed any part of their bodies bullets fell all around. Before the column arrived, the Boers were coming in from other laagers in the neighbourhood, and the 'B' troop, which were at some distance, were unable to support their comrades for fear of being outflanked. For a few minutes after the column came up, the Carabineers were exposed to a new peril. The artillery mistook them for Boers and fired two shells at them, both of which, happily, missed their mark. It was while one of the troopers was signalling to stop this shooting that he was killed. When the main body arrived, the Kopije was shelled, several of the shells hitting the rocks and bursting among the Boers. The infantry were extended in a sort of half moon, and steadily advanced towards the Kopije. A white flag was thereupon hoisted by the enemy. . . . Indignant at the infamous conduct of the enemy (in firing on the flag of truce) Colonel Gildea rode back to the troops and ordered a general advance. Some of the regulars were killed, but the remainder and the infantry volunteers advanced steadily. A charge was ordered, and the volunteers rushed forward and took the house at the point of the

bayonet. The regulars, meantime, arrived at the foot of the hill, and both parties were preparing for the final rush when another white flag was hoisted. This time no attempt was made to fire on the troops, and all the Boers left on the Kopije surrendered." (Nixon).

In the attack that was made on Pretorius Laager Nourse's men particularly distinguished themselves under Lieutenant Glyn. This was altogether a very brilliant affair, and the order, necessary though it was, "to retire," was by no means a welcome one, especially to Nourse's Horse, whose successful opposition to the Boers marked them out as special targets during the retreat. Mr. Du Val in his bright and graphic account of the many skirmishes which took place round Pretoria gives in more detailed form the episodes of the day. "At three o'clock in the morning Lieutenant Glynn roused me, and saddling up an old 'salted' horse of the colour called 'flea-bitten,' which, in lieu of my still invalided brute I had borrowed from Nourse's picquet lines, I repaired to the Commandant's quarters and Garrison Square, to find the latter full of waggons, mule teams, infantry, mounted and otherwise, transport officers high in oath and loud in voice, Carabineers and Nourse's Horse assembling, guns limbered up, artillerymen bustling around, and all the men provided with full water bottles and ration bags, it being conceded that the British soldier fights better on a good honest meal than on an empty stomach.

"Just as the sun was wakening up and giving his first yawn, the Carabineers, under Captain Sanctuary, dashed out of the camp in a westerly direction, while the column, waggons, artillery, foot soldiers, and volunteers, headed off the other way, through the town of Pretoria, on the farther side of which the noise of a series of explosions resounded on the morning air. This movement and the explosions, which were the result of some dynamite experiments of the engineers, were ruses to draw the Boers from the laagers at the north, south, and east of Pretoria to the opposite side of our projected point of attack; and they partially succeeded, we afterwards learned. Colonel Gildea, with his usual escort, dashed out over the 'Veld' in the rear of the Carabineers, who were scouting the country to the left, whilst Nourse's Horse did similar duty to the right. We were now quite seven miles from the camp; and while reconnoitring the neighbourhood, an orderly from Nourse's Horse galloped up with a report to Colonel Gildea that they had discovered a number of the enemy occupying a strong position on the slope of Elandsfontein Ridge.

"The foot volunteers took up a strong position on a rough, rocky Kopije, the waggons were laagered near at hand, the mules driven inside, and a seven-pounder gun, worked

by the handsmen of the Scots Fusiliers, placed in position in front. Sanctuary and his Carabineers seized an eminence which faced and commanded a defile known as 'Quagga's Poort,' and a neck on the mountain chain above it; while Nourse's Horse, with young Glynn, moved down to the right of the ridge over Elandsfontein, and about three-quarters of a mile from its spur, ascending its height to a point where a considerable bulge, or rise, gave them a good commanding position, and one of their blue flags was fairly planted as a token that there they were and there they would remain, as a great French marshal said on a celebrated occasion.

"They had not advanced many yards when the first shots of the engagement were fired, the Boers on the ridge giving the 'blue Puggarees' to understand that their advance was not to be a mere promenade. In a moment they were fairly at it, and with puffs of smoke and the rattle of rifles the scene became quite animated; Nourse's men, who were easily distinguishable by their white ration bags and belts, working cautiously along, taking cover at every step, and making the most of each projection or piece of stone that offered the smallest shelter, from behind which they kept up a spirited fire on the Boers.

"It was about eight o'clock when the preliminary shell was discharged, and during the next twenty minutes the artillery practised away without much effect, except that of keeping the attention of the defenders of the kraals and schanzes while Nourse's men were advancing from left to right, skirmishing admirably, and pushing the Boers along the ridge foot by foot, and gradually carrying about two-thirds of its length.

"At ten o'clock the artillery had suspended their efforts, rendering all the bolder the occupants of the end of the ridge, to which point they had been driven by the attack of Nourse's handful of 'blue Puggarees,' who, distinctly visible, could be seen cracking away; a prominent figure being Glynn standing upon the near side of the brow firing down into the laager in the kloof below.

"Nourse's men were now within a couple of hundred yards of the kraals and laager, when our attention was attracted to a neck in the southern mountain chain, near the Quagga's Poort, far off to our left rear, over which a large body of mounted Boers three hundred or so, were descending in Indian file, the noses and tails of their horses touching each other, looking like a great serpent unwinding its folds as they slowly moved down the slope and deployed in the valley beneath. Rather unfortunately, some little time before this new addition to the combatants put in an appearance, the Carabineers, with the exception of a picquet, had been ordered to the support of the Mounted Infantry,



who, extended to the left front, were rather warmly engaged, and this withdrawal opened the gates to the succouring force from the southern laagers of the enemy, the number of Carabineers left to hold the neck being inadequate, and outnumbered by the Boers by probably twenty to one. It is needless to say that when the Carabineers were sent to support the Mounted Infantry no sign or intelligence had been received of the advancing Boers. Colonel Gildea not over cheerfully ordered the attacking party to retire to the ground occupied by the supports and artillery."

It was on this occasion that Trooper Danagher gained his Victoria Cross. In company with Corporal Murray of the 94th he advanced fully 500 yards in front of our fighting line, exposed all the time to heavy fire, to rescue two wounded comrades. When they reached them, one was found dead; the other was taken up by the two gallant fellows and borne towards our line. "A too well directed shot struck the corporal in the back, and he fell alongside the comrade for whom he had risked and, as we then thought, forfeited, his life. Danagher turned and fired a few shots over his prostrate companions, and then gathering up their rifles as well as his own, marched coolly back to receive the praise of all who witnessed his plucky adventure."

On the 12th of the next month a somewhat more serious encounter took place, in which Colonel Gildea was wounded, and several of the Carabineers killed. The column sent out on this occasion consisted of the two field-guns, R.A., a small detachment of the Royal Engineers for explosive purposes, two companies of the Royal Scots Fusiliers, and two troops of the Pretoria Carabineers and Nourse's Horse, with a Krupp 4-pounder gun, two companies of the Pretoria Rifles, and a few mounted infantry to occupy reserve positions on the road. They moved off soon after 2 A.M., advancing under cover of night. The Carabineers, under Captain Sanctuary, acting as advance-guard, pushed forward to the hill beyond the Six Mile Spruit. The Pretoria Rifles, under Major Le Mesurier, R.E., with the Krupp gun, were left on a hill to the left of the road overlooking the Spruit, with an advanced party to hold the houses at the Drift; while Lieutenant Collings, with a detachment of Mounted Fusiliers, occupied a hill on the right of the road, commanding the Spruit and some dense bush on the opposite bank.

Owing to the tactics of the Boers a retreat became inevitable, during which considerable loss was sustained.

Amongst the wounded was Captain Sanctuary. One who was present wrote:

"I rode down there, and saw poor Sanctuary lying on the ground. Every inch a soldier, his reply to my query as to whether he was badly hit, was: 'Only my leg

broken.' And I afterwards learned that he had tied a ramrod to his fractured limb to enable him to stump out of action, saying as he did so: 'It is more gentlemanly to walk out than to be carried.' "

Unfortunately, the ambulance was captured, the Boers having fired on it despite the Geneva flag, and the gallant captain succumbed to his wounds. It is stated that some feeling was excited amongst the Volunteers on this occasion which led to rather acrimonious disputes, owing to the impression that they had not been duly supported by the other troops.

Practically this encounter, known as the "Red House" affair, was the last of any consequence at Pretoria during the war. The defence was undoubtedly a matter of congratulation considering the difficulties with which we had to contend. In his short history of the war, Grant comes to the conclusion that "in every respect, about Pretoria Colonel Gildea with his regulars and volunteers seemed to have completely established an ascendancy over the enemy, who, it was asserted, repeatedly raised the white flag and fired under it."

On the scene which ensued when the nature of the "peace" became known to the men who had fought so bravely on behalf of the British honour which they had trusted, we will not dwell. To quote the words of one who was present, "the recollections it stirs up are more bitterly mortifying than words can describe."

But it was not only round Pretoria that the Colonial Forces were engaged. The capture of Commandant Raaf, which has been before mentioned, may be considered as more immediately connected with the siege of Potchefstroom and will be more fully referred to. Standerton was besieged, and stood a siege of between eighty and ninety days, in which the Volunteers raised and organized by Major Montague did admirable service. On the occasion of the first skirmish, which took place on the 28th December, a Volunteer, named Hall, lost his life in gallantly warning some of the Mounted Rifles that they were in danger of being cut off. "He achieved his purpose but lost his life. His horse was shot under him. He took shelter behind the carcase and fired at the Boers, holding an unequal fight till a shot killed him. His body was found after the war was over, and was buried with military honours." When at last the siege was over, the Volunteers had to mourn the loss of three of their number killed—the total death list was five—and some wounded. As illustrative of the enthusiasm and *esprit de corps* which the gallant officer succeeded in infusing into his dashing Volunteers, we may refer to the farewell address which they presented to him on his departure from the

Colony. It is scarcely, however, gratifying to dwell too long on the last paragraph, though it is, alas, only too representative of the sentiments universally held. The letter of farewell was as follows :—

“ DEAR SIR,

Before leaving the scene of your past labours, we—a remnant of your old Volunteers—are desirous of presenting you with a token of our esteem, and beg your acceptance of the accompanying. It will tend to refresh the memory of the siege of Standerton and events in connection therewith. It is with sad hearts that we look upon your departure and that of the gallant men—our old comrades during the siege. We shall never forget you and the gallant 94th. Sharing dangers forms a bond of brotherhood; that bond is now rudely severed, and we must now say ‘Farewell.’ Although forsaken and ignored by our country, our hearts will ever warm at the sight of the national uniform, and we all wish the gallant soldiers ‘God speed.’ ”

Lydenburg, Rustenburg, Marabastad, and Wakkerstroom had in their turn to stand the attack of the enemy. It will be remembered that it was while the 94th Regiment was *en route* from Lydenburg to Pretoria that the terrible disaster of Bronker's Spruit took place. The garrison of Potchefstroom consisted of some 213 men who had been despatched there on the outbreak of hostilities, and the actual fighting round the fort commenced on the 16th December. Two days afterwards occurred the fighting which resulted in the capture of Commandant Raaf and two parties of Volunteers who were defending some out-buildings. The following account, describing the usual treatment of Volunteers by the Boers, is interesting as showing that in one sense their position was one of greater danger than that of the regulars. “Commandant Raaf was handcuffed and kept in a damp room with an earthen floor without any bedding or furniture, and without any regard for the ordinary decencies of life. . . . His ‘courteous’ Boer guards did their best to aggravate his illness by threatening to shoot him from time to time, and by jeering at and taunting him. His Volunteers were also handcuffed and ill-treated. A number of them were brought up before the council of war on a charge of high treason, and after a mock trial, sentenced to various terms of imprisonment with hard labour. They were forced to work in the trenches under fire from our fort, and one of them, William Findlay, was blown to pieces by a shell whilst so engaged. The others thereupon

declined to work again, but the Boers compelled them to do so by striking them with the butt-ends of their guns, and by threats of shooting them." Another Volunteer, named Van der Linden, was actually shot as a spy for supplying information before the war had commenced, another colonial, Doctor Woite, being murdered on similar grounds. Seldom does the record of any siege show greater sufferings or more splendid endurance than does that of Potchefstroom. There were women and children who had to be protected, and whose shelter was first a wretched shed some nine feet square, and afterwards a hole in the ground covered by a waggon-sail, which became so riddled with bullets as freely to admit the constant rain. Only one lady, however—Mrs. Sketchley, the wife of the doctor—died. During the truce that was arranged to allow of her interment, the Boers commenced firing before the agreed time had expired. Previously, when the Government offices were surrendered, a truce had been obtained to allow of the retirement. On this occasion, also, did the Boers recommence firing before the stipulated time, and while the white flag was still flying. A very gallant sortie was made on the 23rd of March by Lieutenant Dalrymple Hay, who at the head of ten or eleven men, drove from a position they had seized a party of at least thirty Boers, killing some and taking four prisoners. But starvation was becoming hourly imminent, and the gallant garrison were forced to surrender through a final and characteristic act of treachery on the part of their foes.

Nine Volunteers joined the heroic little garrison of Lydenburg under Lieutenant Long, and one of them shared with Private Whelan of the 94th the gallant and humane task of bringing in from the open the dying Sergeant Cowdy.

At Rustenburg the half-dozen Volunteers under Daniel did good service; at Marabastad there were thirty Volunteers, and, as will be remembered, the garrison were able to defy the Boers till the cessation of hostilities. At Wakkerstroom the civilians to a man were on our side, as was a compact body of Kaffirs. The Volunteers suffered no loss in the numerous small skirmishes which characterised the investment.

So practically ended—save for the wild storm of indignation and disgust which followed—the Transvaal War.\* Most of the Volunteer corps were disbanded, the present organization in many cases dating from a few years later. The actual official dates of the various Volunteer Corps are as under, and it may be assumed that such

\* As a commentary upon the "peaceful" feelings of the Boers now that they had regained their "rights," may be instanced the fact recorded by Nixon that Captain D'Arcy of the Carabineers was eight times fired upon after formal hostilities had ceased.

regiments as were in existence during the Zulu and Transvaal wars were, except where mention is made to the contrary, engaged in garrison duty :

Prince Alfred's Own Volunteer Artillery date from August, 1857, the Cape Town Engineers from July, 1879, the Duke of Edinburgh's Own Volunteer Rifles from April, 1878, the Cape Town Highlanders from the 24th April, 1885, the Cape Town Irish Volunteer Rifles from the 30th April, 1885, the Paarl Volunteer Rifles from the 29th of the same month, the Worcester Volunteer Rifles from May, 1885, the Wellington Volunteer Rifles from September, 1885, the Victoria College Volunteer Rifles (formerly the Stellenbosch Cadet Corps) from January, 1888, and the South African College Cadet Corps from January, 1876.

Of the Midland District Regiments, the Diamond Field Horse date from July, 1887, the Graham's Town Volunteer Horse Artillery from May, 1877, the Prince Alfred's Volunteer Guard from December, 1874, the 1st City (Graham's Town) Volunteers from November, 1885, the Highlands Mounted Company of the 1st City from September, 1885, the Knysna Rangers from June, 1885, the Kimberley (Victoria) Rifles from June, 1887, the St. Andrew's College Cadets from October, 1877, and the Graham's Town Public School Cadets from July, 1879. Of the Frontier District Regiments, the King William's Town Volunteer Artillery date from July, 1877, the Kaffrarian Mounted Rifles from May, 1883, the Frontier Mounted Rifles from March, 1886, the East London Rifles from December, 1883, the Queen's Town Rifles from January, 1883, the Queen's Town High School Cadets from October, 1877, the Panmure Public School Cadets from June, 1885, and the King William's Town Cadets from August, 1880.

To the Natal Forces we have before referred; but, as connected with the more recent development of local defence, and as introducing to notice corps which at one time were familiar to all colonists, and to most home-dwelling Englishmen, we propose to sketch shortly the history of the BECHUANALAND BORDER POLICE.

In the short reference that was made above to another regiment, stress was laid on the fact that, given a good leader, the regiment itself is bound to be proportionately excellent. Judged by this criterion, the Bechuanaland Border Police might well adopt as their motto the familiar "Nulli Secundus." For the search would have to be exhaustive and critical indeed that should show any regiment whose chief's record could beat that of Sir Frederick Carrington. Entering the army with a commission in the grand old South Wales Borderers in 1864, he is found eleven years later organizing the Mounted Infantry in the Diamond Fields Expedition, then, in 1877, raising Carrington's

Horse (the first to bear that familiar and honourable name); then, as we have seen, organizing the Frontier Light Horse, and fighting in the many engagements which occupied our troops till the capture of Sekukuni's fortress. In 1880 and 1881 he commanded the Cape Mounted Rifles, and the foregoing pages bear record to his gallantry and skill.

But the Bechuanaland Border Police, as now constituted, boasts other parentage, scarcely less distinguished. In its composition it includes men who had served in Methuen's Horse, in Carrington's Horse, and in Gough's Horse in the Bechuanaland Expedition of 1884-85.

The name of this expedition is frequently on men's tongues, but the nature of it and the causes which led to it are very unfamiliar. Inasmuch, however, as the workings of local sentiment must be ultimately connected with and causative of the character of a volunteer force, to a great extent locally organized and supplied, it may be well to describe briefly the position of affairs which led to the despatch of the expedition. Discontent, which had been fomented by the disturbances in the territories of Kaffirland and Griqualand, showed in 1878 symptoms of culminating. The natives seemed disposed to proceed to hostilities round the station at Kuruman, and steps were taken at Kimberley to relieve Kuruman and oppose a strong force to the possible attack. Commandant Ford, with some volunteers from Griqualand West and the Barkly West District, marched accordingly, but met with a reverse at a place called Ko, in which Ford and four others were wounded, and four men killed. Sir Charles Warren and Sir W. Owen Lanyon arrived shortly after with a larger force, which included the Diamond Fields Horse before mentioned, and somewhat severe engagements took place at Gamoperi and Litakong. Afterwards, under Colonel Warren, several actions were carried out by the local forces engaged. The occurrences of the next few years belong to the province of political rather than military history, and we will take up the thread of the matter in 1884, when the Imperial Government once more made up its mind to interfere to secure tranquillity and good government. The sentiment which actuated the colonists may be best exemplified by a phrase which occurred in the speech made by the Mayor at a memorable meeting in support of the Imperial intervention at Cape Town. "We intend," he said, "to prove to-night our loyalty to her Majesty the Queen, our loyalty to the flag under which we live, our loyalty to ourselves, and to the constitution under which we are governed."

When the expedition was finally decided on, it was determined that three regiments

of Volunteers should be enlisted, and a competent authority gives the following account of the composition of these three regiments :

“ Sir Charles Warren had entrusted the selection of the men to be enlisted for the regiment of English Volunteers to Captain J. W. Harrel, late 2nd (Queen's) Regiment, who had also previously served in South Africa, both in Zululand and in Bechuanaland. There were very great difficulties connected with this enlistment, but these were most successfully encountered by Captain Harrel as representing Sir Charles Warren, assisted by Colonel the Hon. P. Methuen, C.B., who also personally inspected and approved of each man, and afterwards commanded the regiment. Its name was the 1st Regiment of Mounted Rifles, but it was more frequently called Methuen's Horse. Six hundred men were selected out of immense numbers who crowded Captain Harrel's office in Leicester Square, London, every day. The work of restoring order in South Africa had evidently stirred the mind of the English people; and several good regiments could have been enrolled instead of one. Owing to some legal difficulty, the enlistment could not be ratified till the men reached Cape Town, and in the meantime they secured their passage free to the Cape. To the honour of the men, and the credit of Colonel Methuen, now in command, as well as of Captain Harrel, who selected them, only one man took advantage of this difficulty, and refused to enrol in Cape Town, and in his case it was only a temporary whim, for he was afterwards found in Bechuanaland enlisted in another regiment. Captain Harrel commenced inspecting Volunteers in London on 14th November, and the regiment of 600 men was in camp north of the Orange River, 570 miles from Capetown, before the end of the year.

“ A regiment of Mounted Rifles was raised, by direction of Sir Charles Warren, by Colonel F. Carrington, C.M.G., from the Cape Colony, excluding Griqualand West. This regiment was composed of colonists of all races selected from a large number of applicants. The men were previously examined in riding and shooting. The 2nd Mounted Rifles—or Carrington's Horse, as it was usually called—was a fine body of men, fully acquainted with all the ways of the country. The whole regiment was enlisted at different centres in the Colony, and concentrated to Barkly West on the Vaal River, fully equipped, in the space of six weeks.

“ The 3rd Mounted Rifles, or Gough's Horse, was recruited at the Diamond Fields by Colonel H. S. Gough, and consisted largely of an excellent stamp of men who, living in Kimberley and feeling the effects of the anarchy in the neighbouring country of Bechuanaland, were anxious personally to assist in the re-establishment of peace and

order so necessary to the prosperity of the Colony. Many of the officers and men had formerly served under Sir Charles Warren."

There were in addition Colonel Knox's regiment of pioneers and a regiment of natives under Captain Kempster. Foremost amongst the colonists who vied with each other to welcome Sir Charles Warren and his expeditionary force were the inhabitants of Kimberley and Griqualand West, whose volunteers had done such good service in the recent Kaffir war. From the authority before quoted we gather the following details as to the uniform and equipment of the newly-raised force.

"The clothing of the Bechuanaland Field Force—regulars and volunteers, officers and men—was made of brown or yellow corduroy, and consisted of tunic and pantaloons, with 'putties' of blue stuff supporting the lower part of the leg, and keeping out the dust. The only men not in cords were the Native Guides, who had been favoured with the old red coats formerly worn by the English infantry, no doubt because they were most easily obtained. Some of the regiments wore helmets, but the Volunteers, officers and men, wide-awake felt hats to match the grey cords—not the handsomest, but the most serviceable and most comfortable head-covering for South Africa. The Guides wore Scotch bonnets. It was a special arrangement in the Bechuanaland Force that all officers and men should carry rifles, artillery officers and men included. The advantages of the uniform selected were considerable. The men were often marching through country exactly the colour of their clothing, so that when stretched on the ground at any distance they could not be distinguished. It did not soon get torn by thorn-bushes, did not soon look dirty, and was easily washed. The only complaint heard about the cords were their strong smells when first unpacked and distributed. After a good washing, this, of course, disappeared. There can be no doubt that even in this matter of the choice of clothing an impression was produced in South Africa. Officers and men dressed alike in the cords so much worn by the Boers themselves—every man a rifleman—routine and red tape had evidently been put aside on this occasion; the force had the appearance of meaning 'business.'"

Space will not allow of our following out the various transactions—more diplomatic than military—which characterized the completion of the Bechuanaland Expedition, nor is this the place to dwell upon the conflicting opinions which were more or less freely expressed as to the wisdom of the steps ultimately taken. Suffice it to say that in the middle of 1885, it was determined to substitute an Armed Police for the Volunteers, who



had constituted the Expeditionary Force. But the change was more in name than in fact; as was remarked at the time, "the Imperial Expedition would depart, the Bechuanaland Armed and Mounted Police would remain in their stead. . . . The men, their arms and ammunition, even their uniform, were to be the same." And so terminated the career of the Bechuanaland Volunteers. When the orders for the evacuation of the Colony were carried out they were disbanded, but, as we have said, man- re-enrolled in the new organization.

"The new Bechuanaland Police were speedily enrolled under the leadership of Colonel Carrington of the 2nd Mounted Rifles, who was recommended to the High Commissioner by the General Commanding in South Africa, and by Sir Charles Warren.

"The old Bechuanaland Police, under Major Lowe, were disbanded, but any men who chose to enlist under the new conditions were welcome to do so, and nearly all came forward under their commander, Major Lowe, who remained in Bechuanaland."

Since that time nothing has occurred to call for the active service of any of the Volunteers of South Africa. Of the Bechuanaland Police it has been said that their duties have not been onerous, as the Transvaal has respected its western boundary line ever since the arrival of the Bechuanaland Expedition. They would not have done so but for the continued presence of the Imperial Police, hence the necessity for the latter in the country.

Much undoubtedly remains to be written which would be full of interest alike to colonists and those of the mother-country. The management and organization of the various Volunteer regiments, the particular nationality which characterizes individual corps, the more detailed war services of the officers and men, the various artillery and rifle competitions which are held, and the arrangements in vogue for drill and practice—all these might well find a place in a fuller history of a Volunteer force of which the empire may well be proud. Enough, however, has been said, even in this imperfect sketch, to show the worth of these soldiers of the great Colony, whose character and achievements have evoked on all sides praise and admiration, sentiments which find happy expression in the published words of one who himself has played no inconsiderable part in the more recent movements of the Colony. "I see the time come when for loyalty, intelligence, and resource Austral Africa will be held in honour throughout the empire; when, should Imperial need arise, Austral Africans will equal Australasians in physique and in all soldierly qualities—both vying successfully with

the sons of the colder north, their fellow-subjects in Canada and the Mother Country; while the Bantu regiments from Austral Africa would be unsurpassed by any which could be brought into the field from among the millions of India."\*

In considering the military forces of the AUSTRALASIA<sup>17</sup> COLONIES, we are at once struck by the boundless future possibilities of this enormous "isle of continent." A tendency has shown itself of late years in a certain class of fiction to accept for granted the once seemingly humorous view that the future dominant power of the world will be that vast territory which our fathers knew in its infancy and we ourselves see mighty and vigorous in its adolescence. We have before noted briefly the vast extent of the British Empire. It is not out of place to repeat that in dealing with the military forces of Australasia we are dealing with a force to which—leaving out of sight for the moment the Imperial Army and Navy—is committed the guardianship of an area of three million and seventy-five thousand square miles. To quote from a published authority of great value, this area "is greater than that of continental Europe; excepting Canada, Australia alone is larger than any other territorial division of the British Empire. . . . Victoria is almost equal in area to Turkey and Greece combined, New South Wales is half as large again as France, and the German Empire would not fill a quarter of South Australia."

The very vastness of the subject is prohibitive of anything approaching even a comprehensive view of the military forces, which are held by students of contemporary history to contain the germ of perhaps the foremost army of the future. The several colonies of New South Wales, Victoria, Queensland, South Australia, Western Australia, New Zealand, Tasmania, New Guinea, and Fiji, have more or less organized local military forces of which some may fairly claim to be in the foremost rank. Considering, however, the comparatively few years that have elapsed since the first settlements were made, and bearing in mind that the organization of defensive forces on anything like a regular plan is seldom undertaken till a colony's institutions have advanced fairly forward towards maturity, it will be obvious that few of the regiments whose names appear in the Militia or Volunteer lists can have any history of general interest. But, in pursuance of the plan we have before adopted, the best criterion of the quality and characteristics of the Australasian military forces of to-day will be afforded by recounting what their predecessors have done when occasion has arisen for their services.

\* Mackenzie.

Before, however, doing this, we will glance shortly at the present position of the defensive forces of the Colonies in the order we have named them.

In 1854 it was determined to form a Volunteer force for NEW SOUTH WALES, and accordingly one troop of cavalry, one battery of artillery, and five or six companies of infantry were enrolled. The movement, however, languished, and to all intents and purposes came to nothing after two or three years. In 1860, when volunteering was the cry of the hour, another effort was made, this time under better auspices. A troop of mounted rifles was organized, three batteries of artillery, and some twenty companies of infantry. Seven years later a further step towards the improvement of the force was taken by the passing of the enactment providing for compensation by way of land grants to such volunteers as satisfied the stated requirements, a system, however, which was only in force three or four years. In 1871 it was determined to raise some regular troops, the Imperial Forces being withdrawn, and accordingly some artillery and infantry were enrolled. The latter were, however, disbanded after two years, and the former increased from time to time to their present strength. In 1878 the whole of the Volunteer force was established on its present basis. A part of the Volunteers receive a small payment; the remainder, occasionally described as the Reserve, is purely voluntary. The present strength is as follows:

#### THE REGULAR ARTILLERY.

Volunteers (partially paid)—

The New South Wales Regiment of Volunteer Artillery.

Engineers and Torpedo Corps.

Four Regiments—the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th Regiments of Volunteer Infantry.

Five Cadet Corps of Sydney Grammar School, Nowington College, Windsor Grammar School, King's School, Parramatta, and St. Ignatius' College.

#### RESERVES.

Cavalry—Seven Troops, consisting of the Sydney Lancers, the Illawarra Light Horse, the West Camden Light Horse, the Hunter River Light Horse, the Ulmarra Light Horse, the Upper Clarence Light Horse, and the Grafton Light Horse.

Artillery—Batteries at Balmain, St. Leonards, and Botany.

Infantry—For the Metropolitan and Western Districts, the Fifth Regiment of Infantry (Scottish Rifles), and the Sixth Regiment of Infantry, with the following:—Forbe's Corps, Hunter's Hill, Ashfield, Burwood, New Town, Marriekville, and Dubbo Corps.

For the Southern District, Corps from Braidwood, Albury, Mittagong, Young, Campbelltown, Burrawang, Hay, Moruya, Nowra, Bega, Cooma, Camden, Narrandera, Picton, Joadja Creek, and Queanbeyan.

For the Northern District, the Corps from Murrurundi, Inverell, Tenterfield, Armidale, Gleni Innes, Uralla, Grafton, Quirindi, Narrabri, and Wingham.

The VICTORIA MILITARY strength may be divided into Permanent and Militia, in addition to which there is a very strong contingent of Cadets. Volunteering in Victoria dates as far back as 1854, though the present organization is much more recent. The Melbourne Rifle Regiment was formed in 1854, and two months later the same district equipped a Yeomanry Cavalry corps, while a Rifle corps was about the same time formed at Geelong. The Melbourne Rifle Regiment became, not long after its formation, the Royal Victorian Volunteer Artillery Regiment, and the volunteer establishment remained at the strength of these three corps till 1859. In that year and the following, the all-pervading impulse towards self-defence made itself felt in Victoria as elsewhere, and some four thousand soldiers could be reckoned upon should a need arise. Various modifications and improvements, all tending to the developing of the force, were made during the years intervening between 1860 and 1884, when the Volunteer force gave place to the present Militia, all of whom receive a small annual sum by way of payment, or, as the official description denominates it, retaining fee. It will, however, be observed that there is a Permanent force in addition to the Militia. The present Victorian Artillery dates from 1882, and were preceded by a similar force which had been organized in 1870.

The entire force, then, may be thus summarised :—

Permanent.—The Victorian Artillery,\* a small Company of Engineers, and a few Mounted Infantry.

Militia :—A Troop of Cavalry,† a Nordenfeldt Battery, a Brigade of Field Artillery, with three Batteries, two Brigades of Garrison Artillery of four Batteries each,\* the Corps of Engineers,‡ the Mounted Rifles, and four Battalions of the Victorian Rifles.† In addition to these, there are eleven Battalions of Cadets.

The QUEENSLAND DEFENCE FORCE is divided into Permanent and Volunteers, or to

\* The Artillery have a grenade with the motto "Aut pace, aut bello, Victoria," and the badge of the colony.

† The Cavalry and Infantry have the Southern Cross with the same motto.

‡ The Submarine Engineers have a globe surrounded by a laurel wreath on which is the crown. The Field Company have the same badge and motto as the Infantry.

quote more fully the official description, the divisions may be said to be as follows:—  
 “(1) Permanent Force, who are regularly enlisted as soldiers; (2) Corps of the Defence Force, who are paid while on duty only; (3) Volunteers, armed and clothed by the Government, but receiving no pay; and (4) Rifle Clubs, who receive arms and ammunition from Government slightly under cost price, but no pay.”

The Permanent Force consists of:—Two Batteries of Field Artillery, four Troops of Mounted Infantry, five Batteries of Garrison Artillery, and the 1st Queensland or Moreton Regiment of Infantry, the 2nd Queensland or Wide Bay and Burnett Regiment of Infantry, the 3rd Queensland or Kennedy Regiment, and the Infantry Companies of Toowoomba, Dalby, Warwick, and Rockhampton.

The Volunteer Force consists of:—The Queensland Infantry Volunteer Regiment, the Queensland Scottish Volunteer Corps, and the Queensland Irish Volunteer Corps. In addition to these there are six Cadet Corps.

The Military Force of SOUTH AUSTRALIA dates, as at present organized, from 1886, but both the Permanent and Volunteer branches can claim an earlier origin. It would be tedious to go through the various regulations and enactments which from time to time have influenced the military strength of the Colony, and it must content us to note that so early as 1854, statutory power was taken to provide a Defence Force. In 1877 considerable enthusiasm prevailed in the Colony, steps were taken to embody a Permanent Force, while the various local Volunteer Corps became amalgamated into the South Australian Rifle Association. In 1886 the South Australian Militia was duly organized, and the Volunteer Force established as it now exists. Briefly summarised then, the Military Force of South Australia consists of the following:—

Permanent Military Force:—One Battery of Artillery.

Militia Force:—Two Troops of Lancers—the Adelaide Lancers—one Battery Field, one Battery Artillery, Garrison Artillery, and the Regiment of Adelaide Rifles.

The Volunteer Force:—Eleven Companies of Mounted Infantry, four Battalions of Infantry Volunteers, being the Adelaide Volunteers, divided into Districts,\* and including, amongst others, the City and Woodville, the Southern Suburban, the Eastern Suburban, the Mount Barkar, the Willunga, the Mount Gambier, the Millicent, the Encounter Bay, the Riverton, the 1st Midland, the Kaduina,

\* The 1st Battalion has a dark blue uniform with light blue and scarlet facings. No. 2 District has a grey uniform with rifle green facings. No. 4 has a grey uniform with scarlet and white facings.

the Burra, the Williamstown, the Wallaroo, the Yorkes Peninsula, the Port Augusta, the Gladstone, the Laura, the Terowie, and the Quorn Companies.

The WESTERN AUSTRALIA DEFENCE FORCE is purely voluntary, and dates from 1861, when, following the example set in the Mother Country and in other of the Colonies, Western Australia determined to organize a Volunteer Force. The composition of the Force is as follows:—

Artillery:—The Perth Artillery, one Battery.

Infantry:—The Metropolitan Rifles, the Freemantle Rifles, the Guildford Rifles, the Geraldton Rifles, the Albany Defence Rifles, the Northampton Rifles, and Lady Barker's Own Cadet Corps.

The DEFENSIVE FORCE OF NEW ZEALAND, as may be gathered from the Statistical Report, includes Cavalry, Mounted Infantry, Artillery, Engineers, and Rifles. In addition to these there are, taking the two islands together, some thirty-six Corps of Cadets. It must not be forgotten that the representative of a permanent force in New Zealand is the New Zealand Armed Constabulary, which may be regarded as divided into the Police branch, the Artillery branch, the Engineer branch, the Torpedo branch, and the Field Force branch.

The Militia and Volunteer regiments are more fully as follows:—

Cavalry:—The 1st Regiment (North Island) New Zealand Cavalry Volunteers, comprising the Waiukui Troop Royal Cavalry, the Alexandra Troop, the Wairoa (Patea) Light Horse, the Te Awanutu Cavalry, the Heretanuga (Hutt) Light Horse, and the Rangitikei Cavalry; the Canterbury Yeomanry Cavalry, the Otago Hussars, the Canterbury Mounted Rifles, the Marlborough Hussars, the South Franklin Mounted Rifles, the North Otago Hussars, the East Coast Hussars.

Artillery:—The New Zealand Regiment of Artillery Volunteers with, in the 1st or North Island Brigade, the Auckland Battery, the Wellington Battery, the Napier Battery, the Nelson Battery, and the Parnell Battery of Garrison Artillery; in the 2nd or South Island Brigade, the Dunedin Battery, the Timaru Battery, the Christchurch Battery, the Invercargill Battery, the Oamaru Battery, the Port Chalmers Battery, and the Lyttelton Battery.

Engineers:—The Auckland, Canterbury, and Dunedin Engineers.

Infantry:—The 1st Battalion Otago Rifles, comprising the City Guards, the South District Rifles, the North Dunedin Rifles, the Wakari Rifles, the Dunedin City

Rifles, the Highland Rifles, and the Dunedin Irish Rifles; the 2nd Battalion Otago Rifles comprising the corps from Bruce, East Taieri, Clutba, Waitahuma, Tuapeka, Kaitangata, West Taieri, and the Peninsula Rifles, the 1st Battalion North Otago Rifles composed of the Oamraru Rifles, the Waikonaiti, the Hampden Rifle Rangers, the Otepopo Rifles, the Naseby Rifles, and the Palmerston Rifles; the 1st Battalion Canterbury Rifles comprising the Christchurch City Guards, Christ's College Rifles, Christchurch Rifles, Sydenham Rifles, the Canterbury Scottish, the Richmond Rifles, the Canterbury Irish, and Kaiapoi Rifles; the 2nd Battalion Auckland Rifles comprising the Victoria Rifles, the Auckland City Guards, the Hobson Rifles, and the Onchunga Rifles; the 3rd Battalion Auckland Rifles comprising the Newton Rifles, the Gordon Rifles, and the Royal Irish Rifles; the 1st Battalion Wellington Rifles comprising the Wellington City Rifles, the Wellington Guards, the Wellington Rifles, the Newtown Rifles, the Tearo Rifles, and the Thorndon Rifles; the West Coast (North Island) Battalion comprising the Royal (Raungitikei) Rifles, the Wanganui, the Taranaki, the Palmerston North, the Patea, the Manchester, the Wanganui City, and the Haveri Rifles; the Nelson and Westland Battalion comprising the 1st Westland, the Nelson's City, the Stoke, the Blenheim, the Waimei, the Kumara, the Greyough, the Inangahua, the Blenheim City Rifles, and the Brumerton Rifles; the South Canterbury Battalion comprising the Temuka, the Ashburton, the Geraldine, the Timaru, the Waimato Rifles, and the Ashburton Guards. In addition there are the Honorary Reserve Corps and various Rifle Companies.

The TASMANIAN DEFENCE FORCE dates as far back as 1859, when two batteries of Artillery and twelve companies of Infantry were enrolled. Eight years later, however, the latter were disbanded, the strength of the Artillery establishment being at the same time somewhat increased.

Owing to circumstances, into which it is not necessary to enter, the Colony was for some eight years practically without any Defence Force, the Artillery not being maintained. In 1878, however, the nucleus of the existing Force was formed, the Artillery being again represented by three batteries, and a regiment of Infantry being raised. For some few years these were designated the Local Forces of Tasmania, but in 1885 the present style—The Defence Forces—was adopted, and a small Permanent Force of Artillery enrolled.

The division of the Force is as follows :—

The Tasmanian Permanent Artillery Volunteers—The Tasmanian Engineers, the Launceston Volunteer Artillery, the Southern Tasmanian Volunteer Artillery, the Hobart Town Rifles, the Launceston Rifles—attached to which is the Launceston Cadet Corps, the Hutchins School Cadet Corps, and the Volunteer Reserve Force.

Perhaps one of the most striking features in this brief epitome of the Australasian Forces is the strong show that is made by the Corps of Cadets. The statesman whose memory comes fresh with the primrose of each spring once declared that "the world belongs to the young," and it must be admitted that, looking at the organization and effectiveness of the Australasian Cadets, the world-lordship of the future seems to be well assured. A competent authority writing not long ago on the subject thus expressed himself with regard to these corps. The particular force which he was then considering was the Victorian Cadet Corps, but his remarks may well be taken as explanatory of the sister corps in the other Colonies: "The Volunteer Cadet Corps of Victoria deserves notice. It numbers about 3,000 boys, average age about fourteen years, and is composed of companies (or corps) formed in the many schools which are scattered over the Colony. The members are dressed in regular military uniform, and are armed with a miniature Martini-Henry rifle (the Francotte rifle) manufactured on purpose for them by, I believe, a French or Belgian firm. The school-masters and the elder boys are the officers. The cadets are formed into battalions, made up of companies of schools in the same neighbourhood, and many of the members when they leave school join the Militia. Nothing could bear stronger testimony to the real military spirit throughout Victoria than the formation, appearance, and maintenance of this cadet corps." The interest taken by the Colony generally in the efficiency of the cadet battalions is very marked, and has expressed itself in the foundation of various prizes for competition. Camps of instruction, annual rifle matches, and the presentation of colours to be held by the champion corps, all tend to enhance the value of what has been not inaptly described as the natural nursery of the Colonial Militia. In connection with this fact it may be mentioned that "one cadetship at the Royal Military College, England, is given annually to students of each university in the Australasian Colonies to which a charter by letters patent has been granted."

Any review of the Colonial Forces, taken as a whole, would be incomplete without noticing the valuable services rendered by the late Sir Peter Scratchley, who, as is well



known, submitted to the Home Government an elaborate and exhaustive scheme for the complete organization of the defensive forces. As he very rightly observed, no one who is acquainted with Australia can deny that it possesses the best material for establishing in an economical manner a sound system of defence. This opinion is necessarily to be taken in conjunction with the truth (which he fully recognised) that the defence organization of the Colonies must necessarily differ from that of any other country, inasmuch as it may necessarily have to bear the test of war. Peace arrangements fully as much as war requirements must be considered, for the simple reason that the Colonies "while perfectly secure against attack from within, and situated at great distances from any foreign power likely to be at war with the Mother Country, are, nevertheless, exposed to attack as an integral portion of a great empire." Another strongly expressed opinion of the same authority deserves mention both from the value of the lesson it gives and from the fact that its teaching seems to have been taken to heart in great measure by the colonies concerned. "Australia must bear in mind that the attacks she may be called upon to repel will be well considered and determined, while the men employed in these expeditions will no doubt be highly trained, well-seasoned, and disciplined sailors and soldiers. Any half measures are therefore absolutely dangerous, and it would be preferable to abandon all attempts at defence rather than organize the mere semblance of a defensive organization." While on this subject, it may not be out of place to consider the views occasionally urged by those—now a diminishing number—who are opposed to any military organization whatever worthy of the name. The chances of invasion are, they hold, so remote as to render the expenditure, which must of necessity be incurred in the support of a properly organized force, absolutely needless; the conditions of life in this new world of theirs are such as to revive the old traditional dislike of a standing army or any approach to it; hence the service would be unpopular, and its employment as a support to the civil power would be irritating and dangerous, were it possible to conceive of it in that capacity. Another notion frequently aired, is—or perhaps we should say, was—that if the order of things should be so deranged that any hostile power should invade Australasia, the colonists would rise *en masse*, and then and there organize various bodies of sharpshooters and riflemen similar to the kindred Corps in the Franco-German War. The first of these objections may be perhaps best met by the trite aphorism that it is always the unexpected which happens; to the theoretical objections to a standing army may be urged the simple fact that the causes for such objections are long since

removed; against the suggested uselessness of the military force may be cited the undoubted service rendered at the Newcastle and Chinique riots; while the "grave orts" about, "rising as one man," have been ably answered by Sir Frederick Weld.

"But unfortunately, a custom prevails of hanging or shooting any person not in the uniform of a regularly enrolled corps who may be taken in arms; and in the French war the Prussians, by no means an uncivilised enemy, in such cases, shot hostages, selected by lot from among the unarmed inhabitants, when they could not, or would not, deliver up those who had fired on them, and they levied extra contributions besides. . . . But putting aside this little inconvenience, the fact remains that undisciplined men, acting on their own devices, might most often be as much or more in the way of friend as of foe; no Government would be justified in entrusting them with arms unless put under strict control in purely defensive positions, and even then it would be a great risk, and very doubtful gain, if any. I doubt not men's bravery, but I would most strongly impress upon volunteers that though our race is a fighting race, and comes of 'fathers of war proof,' it is one singularly impatient of control, perhaps even more so in colonies than at home, and therefore, I say that obedience and strict discipline and respect to officers are the first and most essential requisites. You may shoot well, you may drill well, you may march well, but unless you bring to your work strict discipline, and unquestioning and implicit obedience, you are a powerful piece of machinery under no control, out of gear, with wheels working wildly in different directions, and, consequently, utterly useless."

Considering Australia apart from New Zealand we find that early in the present century it had been found necessary to organize Volunteer or quasi Volunteer Corps for the preservation of order in the Colony. We read of the Governor's Body Guard of Cavalry, of the New South Wales Corps, of the Loyal Associations, and the history of the settlement is replete with interest, dealing as it does with the lawless violence of the convict immigrants, and the courageous and often ill-supported efforts of the Governors to quell them. Governor King had informed the Home Authorities of his intention to enrol bodies of Volunteers to cope with the plots and conspiracies which were afoot, and the reply that he received was in the following words:—"Continue by every means in your power to encourage the Armed Associations in which it is the indispensable duty and obviously the best security of every respectable inhabitant to enrol himself." No very active steps, however, were taken till December, 1803, when a proclamation was made to the effect that the Governor "counting on the zeal and

loyalty of all his Majesty's subjects, as well as on the forward disposition of every Briton and Irishman to defend their families and properties against any mistaken attention to this Colony, and to guard against the first effects of any unexpected attack, required all freemen inhabitants of the towns of Sydney, Parramatta, and Green Hills neighbourhood" to come forward and enrol themselves in the Loyal Association. In the following March the discontent gathered to a head, but was promptly suppressed with great credit to the military engaged. In 1825 was raised what Rusden called "the noble Corps of Mounted Police, the terror of evil-doers," and the history of the Colony is full of occurrences in which they proved the accuracy of the appellation. About this time, indeed, the blacks provided plenty of exciting employment for police and settlers alike. They were undoubtedly formidable foes—cunning, numerous, and cruel. Towards the middle of 1837 the residents at Port Philip found it necessary to memorialise the governor, Sir Richard Bourke, for protection. They asserted that "attracted by the expectation of receiving provisions and clothing, which have hitherto been liberally supplied them, an unusual number of natives have for some time past been collecting in this neighbourhood, and there, forsaking their usual modes of procuring food, are depending upon the supplies they obtain either by begging or plunder." They therefore begged for the appointment of a police magistrate, and the despatch of a small body of Mounted Police, whose presence would, they considered, prevent hostilities or at least control their violence. So impressed, indeed, were the memorialists of the need and advantage of this step that they expressed themselves as most ready to defray "the whole cost of such an establishment." A small force was accordingly established at Geelong, which was evidently intended to serve as a nucleus for a local force, as Sir Richard, in his despatch to the Secretary of State on the subject, adds that he has relied "upon the good disposition of the settlers to provide the magistrate with such a force as shall enable him to execute the laws and to preserve peace between them and the aborigines." The expectation of peace was, however, doomed to disappointment. Before long the authorities had to report the committal of "more than one murder in this district," and that an additional body of the Mounted Police had been sent. The following month occurred the tragic occurrence so long remembered as "the murder of the Faithfulls." The official report states that a most furious attack was made on eighteen men of Mr. Wm. Faithful by about three hundred of the aboriginal natives. "It appears that on the morning of the 10th inst., when they were putting their bullocks to, the dash was made, when eight of the white men were unfortunately slain,

and property, I believe considerable, destroyed. Mr. George Faithfull was on his way to this party when he fell in with one of the mangled corpses of the white men ; several were found and buried." Nor was this by any means the only instance of the kind. During April, May, and June in that year (1838), numerous farms were attacked, sheep driven off, and not seldom lives taken. The force of police was increased, and the local military force organized on a more efficient scale. The following account from the letter of a settler gives a fairly accurate idea of the sort of warfare the Colonists, both Police and Militia, had in those days to wage. The blacks were besieging a farmer, who had fortunately been able to apprise the Mounted Police of his danger, and thus to obtain a welcome and valuable reinforcement to his small garrison. "Daylight came," he wrote, "and in the distance we could see their dusky figures crossing the lagoon to our side. They had only three canoes, so that it was a considerable time before all were landed. They then gathered together in a clump in dead silence, and held a council of war, thinking themselves unobserved all the time. At sunrise they slowly approached, and only those of us whom they expected to see showed out to them, and without arms; they appeared to have no other arms than their tomahawks, but every man of them was dragging a large jagged spear with his toes through the long grass. When, by the way, one of these spears enters a man's body it is impossible to get it out again, except by cutting the flesh all round it, or pushing it right through to the other side. As they advanced nearer they spoke, and continued talking to us all the time in the most friendly strain, until within about twenty yards, when just as they (at a signal given by one of them) were stooping to pick up their spears to make a rush, the men in the hut let drive through loopholes right among them ; and we all made a simultaneous rush and put them to rout in a manner that would have given the old Duke intense satisfaction had he been looking on."

In 1839 the Border Police was created and were also actively engaged in the troubles with the natives. From time to time, as occasion demanded, various Volunteer Corps were enrolled to meet the dangers threatened by the frequent outbursts of political excitement which occurred before the new Colony could settle down.

Perhaps no period was more fraught with possible danger, as well for the Colony itself as to the *entente* between it and the Mother Country, as that in which the famous discovery of gold was made. To say that people lost their heads is to employ an expression which conveys but a feeble idea of the actual condition of affairs. First one neighbourhood and then another became inflamed with the craze. The roads to the

earliest discovered mines were filled "with a motley crowd of men, women, and children, trooping with laborious haste to the goldfields. . . . There were fears lest all ordinary labour should be abandoned." A local paper thus described the state of affairs at Bathurst.

"Bathurst is mad again. The delirium of golden fever has returned with increased intensity. Men meet together, stare stupidly at each other, talk incoherent nonsense, and wonder what will happen next. . . . Since the affair was blazoned to the world several gentlemen of our acquaintance have shown undoubted symptoms of temporary insanity. . . . Should the effect be at all proportionate in Sydney to its population, the inmates of Bedlam Point may be fairly reckoned an integral portion of the community."

Were it possible to idealize the picture, the red gold might be depicted as the lovely luring fairy of legend, to follow whom all men were fain, and ready in the pursuit to peril "limb and life, and child and wife," honour, faith, and self-respect, could they but win to the sweet prize that she carried. Gold was indeed—

"The end of every man's desire."

In the fevered crowd which streamed after this dazzling earth meteor that had arisen were to be seen priests, schoolmasters, religious ministers, aristocrats, and plebeians, hustling each other in the frantic press. Nor was it only those at odds with fortune that sought with reckless ardour to mingle with the votaries of the—

"Visible god  
That solders close impossibilities  
And makes them kiss."

Barristers, attorneys, medical men, merchants, shopkeepers, artisans, brick-makers, labourers, and sailors mingled in the throng. It must be confessed that there was explanation enough of the excitement. The reports published in the papers appeared scarcely credible; it seemed almost as if place and time had passed beneath some enchanter's wand, which had changed the Australia of emigrants and convicts into an Arcadian Eldorado, and the present time of prosaic realities to a new Saturnian period of illimitable wealth. One old shepherd was almost daily picking up pieces of gold which lay scattered over the pasturage; it was remembered that in 1849 another shepherd had offered a Melbourne jeweller a lump of quartz containing over one pound weight of gold; in August, 1851, some more quartz was found on the surface, of which, in a lump of seven-and-a-half pounds, four-fifths were solid gold. "To find quartz," wrote

*The Australian and New Zealand Gazette*, "is to find gold. It is found thirty-two feet from the surface in plenty. Gold is actually oozing from the earth." Perhaps, however, it was the nuggets that were found "promiscuous like" by lucky travellers which exercised the greatest sway over the imagination. A morning's walk might reveal these delicious objects, in value from a dozen ounces to twice as many pounds. In Louisa Creek a single quartz nugget brought the happy finder over £1,100. "One person," writes another local paper, "left Melbourne on Saturday, and returned on the Monday week following bringing fourteen pounds weight in gold, dug up by himself. Another man, after working ten days, brought twenty-two pounds weight. Another, a gentleman who only went to see, was anxious to try his luck, and begged a dishful of earth to have, as he thought, a few grains to take home with him; a few minutes' washing gave him nearly two ounces of gold." It was soon found that there would arise absolute necessity for a strong force of law-abiding emigrants to assist the executive in enforcing its claims. It was not likely that the Government could allow this vast excess of wealth to be enjoyed by individuals alone. The State obviously had its rights, and these rights it was resolved to enforce by requiring all of those mining for gold to take out licences permitting them so to do. It must be remembered that a very considerable fraction of the populace at that time was drawn—to employ a trite expression—from the criminal classes; and these naturally resented any interference, especially from the authorities. An opinion, moreover, seems to have obtained, amongst even the law-abiding settlers, that the land and all that it contained was theirs, free from any claim whatever on the part of the State. Consequently the enforcement of the licensing regulation was difficult, and the authorities had to choose between rescinding their enactment or enforcing it. So far as the latter course was adopted the services of the then existing Police were at once called into requisition. "It may seem strange," writes the historian before quoted, "that any man could be found to act as constables amid the excitement of the gold fields. Yet, while enrichment beyond the bounds of former dreams was grasped by the fortunate, a sergeant received (with provisions) only three shillings and ninepence and a cooper three shillings and threepence a day, while thousands of eager diggers were moiling in the dirt which yielded gold. It is true that being on the spot they saw the miserable failures of the unlucky; but it was not that alone which made them loyal. There was a sense of honour. Some of them had served in the fine body of men who, when drafted from regiments of the line, formed the Mounted Police of the Colony . . . the terror of evil-doers and the

welcome guests of all honest men." And evil-doers there were in plenty. "From California came wild men, the waifs of societies which had submitted to or practised the lynch law. The social festers of France, Italy, and Germany shed exfoliations upon Australia. The rebellious element of Ireland was there. The disappointed crew who thought to fright the British Isles from their propriety in 1848 were represented in some strength. The convict element in Australia completed the vile ingredients."

At this time the Police and various local forces were busily and almost universally engaged in the suppression of those numerous gangs of bushrangers whose deeds of violence and effrontery have created almost a literature of their own. Truth to say there was but little romance, and of redeeming qualities none save a dogged courage, in this favourite hero of street arab story-books. Perhaps what our French neighbours would call "extenuating circumstances," may be found in the utter derangement into which all classes in the Colony had fallen. With educated demagogues preaching to willing ears the righteousness of sedition; with an executive, unready for the weight of responsibility suddenly thrown on it; with gold diggers paying a pound for a shave, ten pounds for a day's cab drive, sometimes even "in the very drunkenness of enjoyment of their wealth" lighting their clay pipes with a bank note—it perhaps not to be wondered at that the transported convict for mere commonplace old country crimes, should have thought that the aspect of things in general was something more than favourable to the exercise of his vocation. Parties of successful diggers returning with their "pile" would be attacked in ambush by a party of bushrangers, and after a short but unequal fight would be driven off, leaving their gold in the hands of the robbers, and some of their number dead in the bush. It might fairly be said of the Colony that:

"The law  
Relaxed its hold upon them, and the ways  
Were filled with rapine."

A letter, written from Melbourne at this time and subsequently published, gives a vivid picture of the state of affairs. "The streets at night are filled with prowling desperadoes, ticket-of-leave holders, expirees, or escaped convicts from Van Diemen's Land, while the roads to the mines swarm with mounted ruffians of the same class, who, under the name of bushrangers, emulate in Australia the doughty deeds of the Dick Turpins and Claude Duvals, who in former times took the road on our English heaths and highways. Murders, robberies, and outrages of every kind are so fearfully prevalent as to have become wearisome in their constant repetition. . . . A party of five or six

armed bushrangers on a fine sunshiny afternoon took possession of the public road leading from Melbourne to St. Kilda and Brighton, *within three miles of the metropolis*, and for upwards of two hours robbed every individual, upwards of thirty, who passed up and down the road, taking them afterwards into the bush, tying them together and detaining them as prisoners." It must not, of course, be supposed that these miscreants were always victorious; the men from whom the various bodies of local Police and Militia have been since raised were not likely to remain quiet under this oppression. Even individuals, to whom resistance meant almost certain death, preferred to "take it fighting," and not unfrequently before they bit the dust had rid the Colony of one or two of these pests. But the only effectual way of doing this was to combine, and to call into force the constitutional provisions for the public safety. The pressure had been too sudden for the Government at once to be fully prepared for all emergencies, and while the orthodox weapons of State procedure were being hunted out and refurbished, property was being plundered and lives taken. Escorts therefore had to be organized, and when the Police were numerically too weak to satisfy all the demands made on them for this purpose, auxiliary bands of loyal settlers joined in the duty. Labilliere, in his "Early History of Victoria," tells us that "a distinct body of gentlemen was enrolled as a mounted force, styled Cadets," and the force which may be said to be the *nominal* forerunner of the numerous Cadet Corps now in the Colony, and the actual parent of the well known Victoria Mounted Rifles, offered many inducements to many young men of the higher classes whom their ill-fortune had disgusted with gold hunting.\* It is true that these men were not, strictly speaking, in all cases "Militia or Volunteers," but they may fairly be taken as representative in their way of the military material of the Colony, and, happily for Australia, no more serious call has been made upon her fighting strength than these fierce skirmishes with the desperadoes. At one time, however, it seemed almost certain that the opposition to the question of gold licences would culminate in an organized riot. Mass meetings were held; the usual commonplace about "rising in their thousands," was shrieked by agitators; it was discovered that even the magisterial bench was not above bribery; turbulent meetings were held; a military detachment was only saved from possible annihilation by some Colonial troopers; the disaffected press openly admitted that they proposed to change the dynasty of the country. At the end of November, 1854, the authorities determined to bring matters to a crisis. Instructions were issued that the licences should be inspected according to

\* This "Cadet" force did not have a very long existence, being disbanded in a year or two



custom, but on arriving at the appointed place the Commissioner and his escort were pelted. On this reinforcements were sent for, the Riot Act was read, and the Police, supported by the military, dispersed the crowd. The insurgents began to organize. Hundreds were sworn in; drilling was immediately commenced; "the Commander-in-Chief of the diggers under arms" was stated to have advised those who were unable to obtain fire-arms to get pikes, which, needless to say, were to be employed "to pierce the tyrants' hearts." A formal demand was made that the prisoners taken at the recent riotous meeting should be given up. This was, of course, refused. Captain Thomas, in command of the military—"one of those able, courteous and determined men who maintain the character of their country wherever its flag is waved"—was practically besieged in his camp. When it came to this it became time to act, and this Captain Thomas decided to do. Before daybreak on the 4th December, a compact body, of whom one hundred and twenty-four were Colonials and one hundred and fifty-two men of the 12th and 40th Regiments, was assembled to attack the rebel camp at Bakery Hill. We subjoin Mr. Rusden's account of the fight. At 3 A.M. there left the camp "this small band of two hundred and seventy-six men who went forth against overwhelming numbers. Straggling shots in the distance indicated that the rioters had kept watch and were giving signals. Silently the little band moved on, and in about half an hour reached the stockade. The left flank and rear of the place were threatened by part of the Mounted Force thrown forward for the purpose. The remainder with the Foot Police were kept in reserve, while the 12th and 40th detachments were extended in skirmishing order, with supports, in front of the entrenchment and of a barrier of ropes, slabs, stakes, and overturned carts. The signal shots had not been in vain. A hundred and fifty yards distant a sharp fire without previous challenge rattled amongst the soldiers. The bugle to commence firing was sounded by order of Thomas; the troops advanced, giving and receiving a brisk fire; Thomas brought up the supports with the words 'Come on, 40th,' the entrenchment was carried with wild hurrahs, and a body of men with pikes was immolated under the eye of the commander before the bugle to cease firing recalled the soldiers from the work to which they had been provoked. The rebel flag was pulled down with wild shouts. All persons found within the entrenchment were captured, and some of the many fugitives were intercepted by the cavalry." We have before had occasion to notice in connection with the Fenian insurrections in Canada, the invariable habit of rebel leaders to shrink from personal danger. On this occasion amongst the prisoners taken was one Seckamp,

who, as editor of the *Ballarat Times*, had made himself conspicuous by the virulence of his attacks on the soldiers and Colonials. They were brutal, cowardly, and would be crushed by the offended diggers rising in their might, &c. He, too, it was who had promulgated the grandiloquent phrase about changing the dynasty of the country. This heroic individual narrowly escaped the fate he so richly deserved at the hands of the infuriated military, a fate which only the unbounded influence of Captain Thomas was able to arrest. We read that he displayed such abject terror that his comrades shrunk from him in disgust.

The insurrection at Ballarat was crushed, but only to rear its head at Melbourne. Forthwith special constables were enrolled and a corps of mounted gentlemen volunteers was organized to meet the outbreak which unfortunately received some support, though not in an overtly rebellious manner, from the populace. But the determined action of Captain Thomas may be said to have given the wholesome lesson that the Government was able to check any attempt to inaugurate a reign of terror.

Throughout the other Colonies the Militia and other local forces were from time to time called upon to adopt similar measures. In Tasmania, again, what is known as the "Black War" in Van Diemen's Land, provided many opportunities for the services of the local levies, which were, moreover, frequently employed in checking the turbulent outbreak of the population of this Colony, that under its earlier name of Van Diemen's Land had been with many people for long a synonym for lawlessness and criminality.

The growth of the military forces of Australasia, according to the official statistics, has been before referred to; and from what we have said it will be evident that no more detailed history of the several corps—excluding, as we necessarily must, the various interesting details that might be given dealing with their internal organization—can be here given, inasmuch as they are happy enough to have no war within their borders to record.\* It will, perhaps, emphasize this if we quote the statement made, not many years ago, by Captain Gretton in an interesting paper he contributed to *Colburn's United Service Magazine*: "Under no obligation to the Imperial Government to protect themselves, bound by no tie of federation to inter-colonial uniformity of action, and imbued with a touching belief in the ubiquity and omnipotence of the British fleet, the different Australian governments drifted on vaguely for several years. Some raised paid Volunteer Corps, others relied on small batteries of Permanent Gunners, with unpaid

\* We, of course, except New Zealand, the history of the war in which is given below.

Volunteers in second line, while South Australia was content to entrust her honour and safety to the handful of Policemen who kept order in her law-abiding capital."

As has been said, this state of apathy was happily dispelled by "the gloom of imminent war," which, in 1877, lowered over Great Britain. On a sudden the truth seemed to flash into the minds of the various colonies that, for weal or woe the Empire was one; that, as has been well expressed, "war once declared by or against Great Britain—from the Dominion of Canada and the Empire of India down to the most insignificant little West Indian Crown Colony—all are at war with the enemy of the Mother Country, and thus exposed, at any moment, to his attacks and depredations."

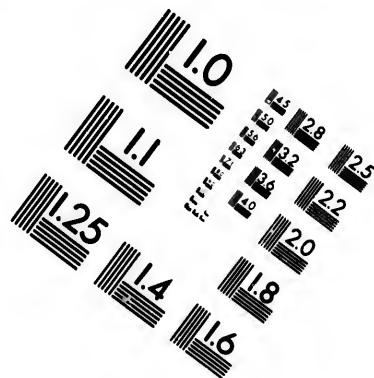
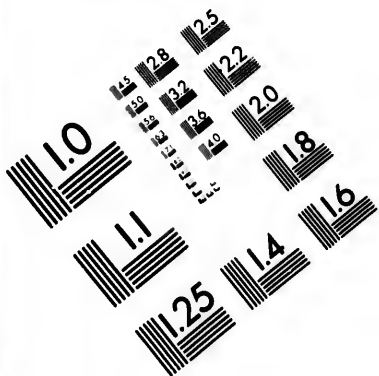
It is true that at the time of the New Zealand war the other Australian colonies, notably Victoria, showed practical sympathy with their sister colony; but not till the able organization of Sir Peter Scratchley, Sir William Jervois, and others, had raised the various defence forces into a capable army, did it become evident that in the far south there had arisen a factor in Imperial strength, which claimed and deserved consideration. During the continuance of the Transvaal war, the loyalist feeling in Australasia was very marked. The chronicle of the war with its changing episodes was eagerly followed; it is said that more than one instance occurred of individual colonists going, of their own initiative, to England to seek permission to serve in the Imperial ranks. The writer before quoted refers to one instance of what he rightly describes as the remarkable loyalty and affection of the old country which pervades all the Australasian troops. "Within four hours of the arrival in Adelaide of the news of our defeat at Majuba Hill, three hundred men from the small defence force of South Australia had volunteered for active service in the Transvaal, 'to help our chaps against the Boers.' The offer had hardly been telegraphed home, when the other colonies hearing of it, instantly began to follow suit, and in twenty-four hours 2,000 sturdy Australians had placed themselves, too, at the service of the Home Government, eager to help avenge the honour of the British Flag."

The offer was not accepted, but the first voice had made itself heard of that mighty cry for Imperial Federation, which is now ringing throughout the length and breadth of the Empire.

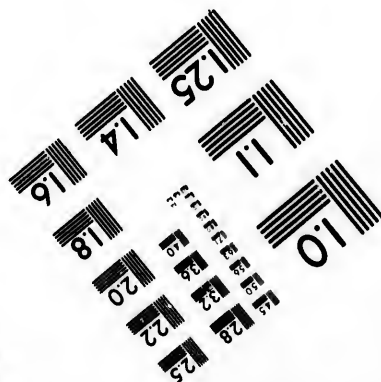
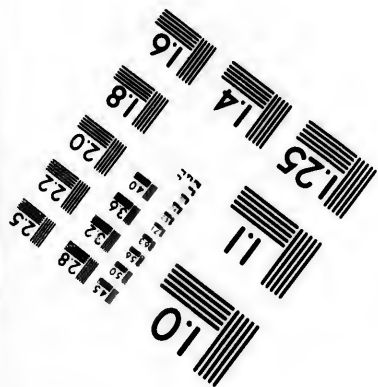
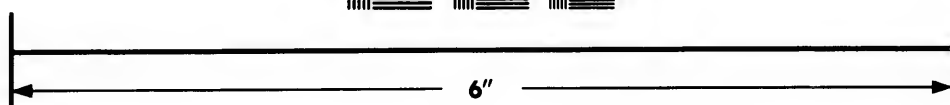
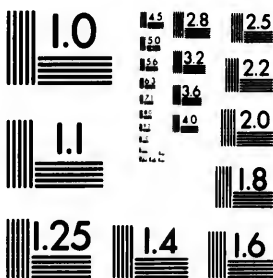
But though they were spared the humiliations of the Transvaal War, the time was nigh at hand when the Australasian forces would seek, and that successfully, to share the warfare of the Mother Country. Much has been written about the participation of the New South Wales Contingent in the Egyptian Campaign, and we have, in preceding

pages, referred at some length to the various incidents which characterised that campaign. It will be our province in this place to refer simply to the circumstance, attending the despatch of the Contingent, and perhaps it may be well here to mention that though the New South Wales Contingent was the only one which actually took part in the campaign, others of the colonies made similar offers of assistance to the Imperial Government. Volunteers crowded to enrol their names, declares Froude in his "Oceana." "Patriotic citizens gave contributions of money on a scale which showed that little need be feared for the taxpayer. Archbishop Moran, the Roman Catholic Primate, gave a hundred pounds as an example and instruction to the Irish; others, the wealthy ones, gave a thousand." When the tidings came that the offer was accepted, the enthusiasm is described as irresistible. "To be allowed to share in the perils and glories of the battlefield as part of a British army," writes the same eloquent author, "was regarded at once as a distinction of which Australia might be proud, and as a guarantee of their future position as British subjects. The help which they were now giving might be slight, but Australia in a few years would number ten millions of men, and this small body was an earnest of what they might do hereafter. If ever England herself was threatened . . . they would risk life, fortune—all they had—as willingly as they were sending their present contingent. It was a practical demonstration in favour of Imperial unity." As to the rights and the wrongs of the immediate question at issue between England and Arabi, the Australians contemptuously declined to admit that even if there were any "question" the fact could possibly have anything to do with them. They had not yet arrived at that stage of drivelling cosmopolitanism which assumes that we must always be in the wrong, and, acting on that assumption, is prepared on all occasions to apologise and eat the leek. With the Australians, as with their cousins of the Stars and Stripes, the sentiment was, "Our country! in her quarrels with other powers may she always be in the right, but—our country, right or wrong!" "Many causes combined to induce them to welcome the opportunity of being of use. There was a genuine feeling for Gordon. . . . Gordon was theirs as well as ours. He was the last of the race of heroes who had won for England her proud position amongst the nations; he had been left to neglect and death, and the national glory was sullied. . . . It would have a further effect which would be felt all the world over. In their estimate of the strength, present and future, of Great Britain, the great powers had left the colonies unconsidered. . . . They had taken the political economists as the exponents of the national sentiment. They had





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

15  
28  
32  
25  
18  
22  
20  
1.8

10  
57

assumed that if war came the colonies would immediately fall off. In this spontaneous act of the Australians the great powers would see that they would have to reckon not with a small island whose relative consequence was decreasing daily, but with a mighty empire with a capacity for unbounded expansion, her naval fortunes duly supported in the four quarters of the globe, a new England growing daily in population and in wealth with incredible speed, and all parts of it combined in a passion of patriotism, with the natural cord of affinity to which the strongest political confederacy was as a rope of straw. A contingent of seven hundred men was nothing in itself, but it was a specimen from an inexhaustible mine." Such are the sentiments with which Mr. Fróude credits the Australians in connection with the Soudan contingent, and it would be difficult more truly or forcibly to summarise them. Various communications passed between the various Colonies and the Imperial Government. Details had to be arranged; before the offer was circumstantially made it was necessary to ascertain whether the principle would be agreed to. The various discussions and despatches resulted at last in the sending of the following telegram to the Secretary of State:—"This Government offer Her Majesty's Government two batteries of field artillery, with one battalion of infantry, to be transported by Orient steamer, and undertake to land force at Suakim within thirty days after embarkation."

This was speedily acted on, and the Australian Contingent formed a valuable addition to the British Forces. They were commanded by Major-General Richardson,\* the Brigade-Major being Lieutenant-Colonel Mackenzie.\* Amongst the other officers were Sergeant-Major Williams, Major Blanchard, Lieutenant-Colonel Bingham, Majors Bartlett,\* Spalding,\* Murphy, Airey,\* Paul,\* Norris,\* Gascoigne, Lieutenant-Colonel Wells,\* Captains H. P. Airey and C. B. Airey, George, Bennett, Mulpolland, Nathan,\* Parrott, Boam, and Milward, Lieutenants Kingdun, Shipway,\* and Sparrow,\* most of whom, with their men, took part in the advance on Tamai.

The parting words of Lord Wolseley may be justly quoted as showing the estimation in which, not only he, but all those whose opinion was of worth, regarded the Australian Contingent. In his farewell inspection, after expressing the great pride he had felt in commanding them, he went on to say that "he considered that their work, bearing, and behaviour, had been deserving of the highest praise. The fact of New South Wales being able to send such troops would probably deter any power from hastily entering upon war with Britain. The Australians had, individually and collectively, deserved

\* Mentioned in despatches.



the esteem of their comrades in arms, and took with them the best wishes of the whole troops." Naturally, the colony itself was proud of its representatives. In the words of one of its statesmen:—"The little noble band is but the advance guard of a glorious Imperial Federation. They will go on, and men will know what force is behind and is upon its march to the front."

It is, perhaps, somewhat difficult to realise the fact that this action on the part of the colony was opposed as unconstitutional, as ill-advised, by some local politicians. It was urged that the Ministry, in sending the Contingent, were acting beyond their powers; that the precedent was a bad one, and that no real necessity had been shown. Moreover was it from a prudential point of view a wise step? Possibly so long as they kept out of the quarrels of the Mother Country, her foes might leave them unmolested. It was the more necessary to consider these things, as just then there were rumours that Russia was showing signs of forcing a quarrel with Great Britain. The Colonies had best remember the Hudibrastic axiom:—

"Those who in quarrels interpose  
Most often wipe a bloody nose."

"To put themselves forward unasked was to challenge attack, and was quixotic and absurd. They might wake up some morning to find the Russian ironclads at the Bluff, with Sydney at their mercy." Into the merits of the question we are not concerned to enter. Granted for a moment that it was unconstitutional, and that the strictly prudent course would have been to have obtained a fuller sanction—it may still be doubted whether any Ministry could have taken a step more in accord with the real feeling of the people. Some of us may remember the lines written about another "imprudent" act which resulted in the freeing of a wretched horde of slaves by the action of half-a-dozen Englishmen; and the concluding verse not inaptly describes the general sentiment felt for similar deeds.

"A glorious gift is Prudence,  
And they are useful friends  
Who never make beginnings,  
Till they can see the ends:  
But give us now and then a man,  
That we may make him king,  
Just to scorn the consequence,  
And just to do the thing."

This is what the Stuart Ministry had done, and if apology was needed, it must be admitted that no better one could have been made than that offered by the Attorney-General in a speech he made on the subject.

"Gentlemen," he said, "in sending military assistance to England in a foreign country, we were perfectly well aware that we were straining the powers of local provisions made for our own defence; but we resolved that, as members of the Empire, we were defending ourselves and all most dear to us just as much in Egypt as if the common enemy menaced us in this Colony. (Cheers.) The Queen's enemies were ours wherever they were; and this lesson, which we are now teaching those who are incapable of appreciating it, they may some day understand in their own persons.

"Who are against us? Those, in the first place, who would have disposed of their souls (if purchasers for such extremely damaged articles could have been obtained in an over-stocked market of such commodities) for the conception of our idea, and the means of giving it effect; those who hate a generous action, and those who see and feel in a nobler and purer public spirit the death-blow given to factions and intrigues; these are our enemies; but they are those also of the Empire. They deride our brave Australian troops, but they would mock also the chivalry of the Guards. They hold up our service to scorn, and ourselves to insult. Gentlemen, their day is past—(hear, hear)—and a brighter and more auspicious one is dawning for peace, and freedom, and glory."

The military forces of VICTORIA, as distinct from what has been said about those of the Australasian colonies generally, call for a passing notice. No effort has been spared to render them as efficient as excellent organization, well considered plans of defence, untiring practice, and frequent competitions of all arms can do. The general division is between Garrison and Field Forces, the former including the Garrison Artillery, the Permanent Corps of Engineers, the Submarine Mining Engineers, and some of the Infantry—the latter consisting of the Mounted Corps, the Field Batteries, and the remainder of the Engineers and Infantry. To quote the description given by the late Commandant,\* "the Garrison Artillery is all told off to stations in the various forts and batteries where the necessary camp equipment for the numbers required at each place is kept in readiness, a proportion of regular Artillery being told off to each work in the Port Philip defences, the officers of the regular Artillery acting as staff officers in addition to their regimental duty. The Submarine Miners in like manner with the Garrison Artillery are told off to stations in conjunction with the permanent section of Engineers, which, during peace time, has charge of the submarine mining depôt, electric lights at the various forts, &c., the mines for each mine-field being kept loaded, and

\* Major Disney, R.A.

with all the stores pertaining to them ready for immediate laying. All that has to be done then when the forts have to be manned is to ration them, to send the allotted proportion of regular Artillery to each fort, the detachments in peace time being kept small, so as to have as many men as possible at the headquarters of the corps, to muster the various Militia Corps (none of which connected with the defence of Port Philip are more than four hours by rail from the Heads) and to despatch them to their destinations. The whole of the Field Force and the Infantry attached to the garrison force has a complete field equipment. The camp equipage of the County Corps is kept in their respective stores, that of Metropolitan Corps in ordnance charge at Melbourne. The necessary carriage could, in case of emergency, be obtained by the Assistant-Commissary-General in a few hours; special carts and waggons, such as small-arm carts, artillery, engineer, and ambulance waggons, forges, &c., are kept in ordnance or in store charge."

From the same authority we learn that on any sudden alarm of invasion or other serious occurrence, twenty-four hours would suffice to see the whole force at the various stations assigned to each component corps. Very great value is attached by the authorities to the Victorian Rifle Association which, by the number and value of the prizes it offers, greatly stimulates efficiency in marksmanship, while many of the wealthy colonists give prizes on their own account open to all branches of the service.

The VICTORIA MOUNTED RIFLES are, as has been before observed, a purely voluntary body. "They are divided into nine companies, each company being formed of a group of detachments, varying in strength from about ten to thirty men, the detachments being scattered all over the colony, and the headquarters of each company being fixed as nearly as possible in the centre of each group of detachments." They are an eminently serviceable corps, and it is satisfactory to hear that there is a prospect that within the present year (1891) their fellow subjects in the Mother Country will have an opportunity of appreciating their capabilities in competition with Imperial troops. The Commanding Officer of the Mounted Rifles and the Adjutant are on the permanent staff. Some idea of the pains taken to ensure the high efficiency of the corps may be gathered from the fact that every member is required to belong to one or other of the numerous rifle corps, at the range belonging to which he carries out his annual course of musketry, in addition to which, in order to be classed as effective, he must attend twelve daylight drills in each year. This however is a very small proportion of the work actually done in most detachments. "The Mounted Rifles, I venture to maintain," writes another

authority,\* "should receive every possible care and encouragement. It is singularly suitable for, and should be a speciality in, Australia, where there are long distances to travel over indifferent roads or tracts; good horses and plenty of them, thousands of strong, active young men whose daily occupation and course of life makes them good riders and good shots. All they want to make them model Mounted Infantry is a certain amount of organization and discipline, and to be periodically mustered and assembled together a few times in the year in order to accustom them to act in masses.† I do not mean serried masses like cavalry; they may be as extended as necessary, but the action to be in concert. The present force of Victorian Mounted Rifles is very popular and a decided success. . . . They are armed with rifle and sword; they are serviceably dressed in khaki-coloured uniform, breeches, gaiters, tunic, and a soft broad-brimmed hat with a feather in it. The corps itself is destined to be a feather in the cap of Australia."

Any mention of the Victorian Artillery would be incomplete which omitted notice of the Nordenfeldt Battery, which owes its origin, and much of its support, to Sir William Clarke. "It is armed with three Nordenfeldt ten barrel rifle calibre guns, drawn by four horses each: the officer, Sergeant-Major, numbers one, and trumpeter being mounted, and three members per gun carried on the carriages. The whole equipment is supplied by Government, the Battery forms a complete unit; it usually encamps with the cavalry, and works during manoeuvres with cavalry or mounted rifles. The men are armed with swords, carried as in the R.H.A., and two carbines per subdivision are also carried on the limbers." The Field Artillery, "about the most popular corps in the Militia," is also possessed of a very complete equipment. Each Battery has six twelve-pounder breach loading guns, powerfully horsed, and with waggons, &c., complete. The Batteries are armed as in the Royal Artillery, the uniform and horse appointments closely following the same pattern.

"As regards ideas and habits of military discipline," writes Colonel Elias, "the men of the Victorian Militia are about on a par with our Volunteers in England. Like them, they do not habitually live together in any military organization; like them, they are intelligent, and amenable to reason; but unlike the English Volunteer, the Victorian Militiaman is paid for each parade that he attends."

What has been said relative to the Victorian Forces may well serve as representative of the other Colonial troops, and the following remarks might to all intents and purposes have been written of the Australasian Forces as a whole.

\* Colonel Elias.

† It will be observed that this is now to a great extent assured.

"All through the Militia the men and officers make great sacrifices of time and money in their zeal for the defence of their country. A very striking instance of this was afforded by the Garrison Battery (in South Australia), who almost to a man during one year attended ninety voluntary and unpaid drills, in addition to eight compulsory and paid parades. . . . Soldiering is very popular. There is a steady, and ever-increasing flow of recruits into the ranks of the Militia, so that notwithstanding a severe medical examination, the inevitable waste is amply provided for. About thirty per cent. of the time-expired men rejoin for a second term of three years, for which they receive £1 bounty. Many more enrol in the reserve, where they annually attend twelve drills, and fire through their classes to keep up the knowledge acquired with the colours."

A few words may be said as to the structural defences of the Colony, about which so much is heard from time to time. New South Wales has devoted very considerable care and cost to the protection of part at least of the coastline which includes the splendid harbour of Sydney, which has been described as the future Imperial and Naval Arsenal and Dock Yard for the whole of Australasia. Port Jackson and Botany Bay are amply defended by forts and submarine mines on the plan laid down by Sir. W. Jervois, while a strong battery is in position at Newcastle. In Queensland, Brisbane, Maryborough, and Rockhampton have batteries and torpedo defences; in Victoria, the Heads Channel, Portland, Warruambool, and Belfast are all protected with strong batteries, forts, and mines; South Australia has erected two strong forts commanding the approach to Adelaide; Hobart and Launceston in Tasmania are protected by batteries of considerable strength. The defences of Western Australia are still comparatively insufficient.

With regard to what the undertakings which we have called the "structural defences" have effected in the way of completeness, an idea will have been gained by the description given above of the Victorian batteries. It will be seen that recently steps have been taken to facilitate the concentration, which would of course become necessary in the event of an enemy effecting a landing in force. It may, indeed, be stated generally that the opinion expressed by Major Disney of the capabilities of the Victorian batteries and forts, holds good with more or less exactness of the other Colonies, subject to the qualifications above mentioned. In his opinion the Victorian works could all be held against assault by their own garrisons supported by the Infantry already referred to as forming part of the Garrison Force. Moreover, in estimating the strength of the defensive works, the fact must not be lost sight of that the greatest possible attention is paid to exercise, gun practice, and every means of acquiring experience and knowledge.

"There is an annual course of gunnery between the 1st August and the 1st January in every year attended by all gunners and non-commissioned officers under the rank of staff-sergeant; at its conclusion there is an examination, theoretical and practical . . . while similar courses are held in the Militia Artillery." In addition, what we may call the domestic arrangements of all the corps, especially, perhaps, those chiefly responsible for coast defences, are very excellent and, while they testify to the pride taken by the Colonies in their Military Forces, conduce not a little to the pride and *esprit de corps* which is to so great an extent a characteristic of the Australian Army.

The NEW ZEALAND colonial troops have this advantage over the rest of the Australasian colonies—if we except Tasmania—that within the present generation they have taken part in warfare within their own borders, warfare which, at one time, threatened to assume serious proportions. It will, perhaps, add to our just appreciation of the circumstances which led to the disturbance, if we give a few of the more important dates, which serve as landmarks in the history of the British occupation. Passing over the earlier period which elapsed after the discovery of the island, we find that, in 1839, the New Zealand Company set on foot a scheme for the systematic and extensive acquisition of land. The method in which this scheme was carried out, and the opposition it aroused amongst the natives, caused the Crown to interfere, and the first Governor, Captain Hobson, was appointed. Five years later the natives, under a chief named Heke, attacked and destroyed the town of Kororareka, on which occasion, it is worthy of remark, that "nothing like a savage or bloodthirsty disposition was evinced by the Maoris. On the contrary they restored, uninjured, to their parents a number of children who had been left behind in the hurry of the flight." Measures were taken to punish Heke, but the first efforts were not successful. Renewed endeavours, however, compelled the chief to sue for pardon. In 1848 there was some fighting in Wanganui. Maketu at the head of a strong body of natives made a raid on the farm occupied by some settlers named Giffan, and so far departed from the chivalrous conduct which characterised their proceedings at Kororareka as to murder the whole family. The Europeans who had settled in the neighbourhood were driven in, and the Maories were actually bold enough and strong enough to occupy a portion of the town, despite the fact that it was garrisoned by the 65th regiment of Imperial troops, who, to their astonishment, found themselves actually besieged by their underrated foe. In connection with this siege, the following anecdote is told of a well-known settler named M'Gregor. It appears that by some mischance some of his cattle strayed, and were discovered by

him to have found their way to the opposite side of the river. It did not seem a particularly dangerous task to retrieve them, and this M'Gregor set himself to do. He crossed the river, "and was ascending Shakespeare's cliff, when an ambush of Maories, from a ti-tree scrub, suddenly rose and pursued him. He tried to run for his life, and as he looked round at his pursuers they fired. A ball struck his mouth and passed out of his cheek without displacing a tooth. Finding himself hard pressed, John M'Gregor leaped over the cliff on to the beach below—some say a height of fifty feet—and so escaped." Comparative quiet—disturbed, it is true, by occasional outbreaks—pervaded the colony till 1860, when the Taranaki War broke out, the cause of which, put briefly, was the refusal of the chief king to allow of the sale of land—to which he himself had no claim—to the British. The district of Taranaki was placed under martial law, and Colonel Gold took command of the regular and militia troops. The first engagement took place at Omata, a place near New Plymouth, and on this occasion it is recorded that "the Militia and Volunteers particularly distinguished themselves, and inflicted considerable loss on the enemy." The behaviour of the Militia in this stage of the war may be gathered from the following extract from a reliable writer.

"The first engagement in which the New Zealand Militia and Volunteers distinguished themselves took place on the 28th of March, 1860, during the early part of the Taranaki war, with a most creditable result to the small body of untried men engaged, few of whom had previously met an enemy in the field, and who were for the most part armed with the old Brown Bess musket, a weapon inferior in every respect to the double-barrelled shot guns of the Maoris. . . . At noon on the 28th, Lieutenant-Colonel Murray, 65th Regiment, marched from town with three hundred men, one hundred and twenty of whom were Militia and Volunteers. The latter corps, under command of Captains Browne and Stapp, were detached with orders to march by the sandhills, take the enemy in rear, and rescue the Rev. Mr. Brown's family and the others; while Colonel Murray, with the main body, was to march by way of the Omata village to attack the enemy's position on the Waireka Hill, and so draw their attention from the flank movement. Meanwhile the Maoris, from their commanding position, had noted the march of each column, and thoroughly understood its significance. The settlers on their way up from the beach were allowed to cross, without molestation, two deep ravines, which were immediately occupied by the enemy. Their retreat was thus cut off, both in front and from the ravines on their left flank; and on arriving at the crest of the plateau our

men suddenly found themselves engaged by upwards of four hundred of the enemy's best men." The position was, undoubtedly, serious, and Colonel Murray despatched a few men of the 65th Regiment to the support of the settlers; but, probably from some misapprehension of the exact position, the succouring party were shortly withdrawn, with the exception of about a dozen. Captain Stapp, of the Taranaki Militia, proved himself equal to the crisis: he fortified a farmhouse, held it till nightfall, and then marched out with fixed bayonets, and, very much to the astonishment of himself and his men, succeeded in making good his retreat, with a total loss of only one killed and eight wounded.

In June an attack made on a pa in which King had entrenched himself failed, Colonel Gold left the colony, and Major-General Pratt arrived to take command, bringing with him considerable reinforcements from Australia. At this time the New Zealand Militia and Volunteers in Taranaki—of whom it is said that they probably fought more and suffered more than any other men in New Zealand—were rather under six hundred. And now commenced a war which Sir J. E. Alexander designates "a series of combats against an enterprising, active, and cunning foe, armed with double and single barrelled guns, tomahawks, and 'merés' or flat clubs, fighting under every advantage in their native fastnesses and fern-clad plains, and, when worsted or tired, retreating into their entangled forests." The Maori combatants and our regular soldiers, the Naval Brigade, also the Militia and Volunteers, did their best for victory, dug trenches, constructed stockades, and plied the rifle, and our artillery their terrible great guns, for twelve months. The danger was considerable, and the work was hard. A great deal of foolish talk was indulged in about the difficulty our soldiers experienced in subduing "a lot of savages"; comparisons were drawn between the success of our troops in China, and the unsatisfactory conclusion of the New Zealand War. The number of the Maoris was stated—for the purpose of pointing the moral—never to have exceeded six hundred, their weapons were "wretched flint and steel muskets and tomahawks," and a great deal more to the same effect. It is necessary, therefore, in order to appreciate the services rendered by the troops, of whom so considerable a number were Colonials, to state more accurately the actual conditions of the war. "The arms generally used by the Maoris," declared Captain Pasley, R.E., "are double-barrelled guns (not 'wretched flint and steel muskets,' as stated by *The Times*, but good percussion guns), and, for close quarters, tomahawks with long flexible handles, which



enable them to reach an adversary's head over his guard. They are not ignorant of the value of the rifle, which is used by some of their marksmen, but as a general rule they prefer the double-barrelled sporting gun to any other arm. . . . One of the most fallacious opinions ever entertained by reasonable men, is, that because savages have often been able to offer a serious resistance to regular troops, under favourable circumstances, therefore any other force, no matter what, Colonists, sailors, gold-diggers from Australia or California, men of any kind in short, provided they have not been trained as soldiers, would be much more efficient, owing to some imaginary power that every man *not* brought up as a soldier seems to be supposed to possess of getting through dense scrub and supple jack, and of doing without supplies of provisions, clothing, and ammunition. In short, discipline is imagined to be a mistake, and organized movements worse than useless. Nothing can be more unfounded than such a notion. The Maoris are infinitely more formidable enemies than the North American Indians, or any other savages with whom the English nation has had to deal, with the single exception of the Kaffirs, because they possess discipline and military organization in a very high degree." Then, too, in order to understand the success of the natives in their style of fighting, the character of the country—"broken and mountainous, intersected by swamps, for the most part covered with dense forest, and entirely destitute of roads or tracks practicable for wheeled carriages of any kind"—must be taken into consideration. The Maoris, therefore, "trust to the closeness and rapidity of their fire rather than to accuracy at a distance, and their plan usually is to invite and await an attack in rifle-pits, covered from distant fire and protected in front either by natural obstacles or by the double stockade of a pa.

"Against an attack by *vive force*, probably no system of defence and no kind of arms could be more thoroughly effective than those adopted by the Maoris. It is exceedingly difficult to make a serious breach in the stockades of a pa by artillery fire, even at a short range; and any attempt to climb over or cut them down must be made at a distance of only a few feet from the muzzles of the guns of the defenders, who, being themselves well under cover, are able to overwhelm the storming party by a close and destructive fire, to which no effectual reply can be given. Owing to the rapidity with which they can be loaded and fired, double-barrelled guns are much more effective at close quarters than rifles."\*

\* It must be remembered that the above was written before the days of magazine and repeating rifles.

The Militia were divided as follows: At New Plymouth there were about four hundred and thirty, at Waitara some fifteen rank and file were brigaded with the 40th under Major Nelson of that regiment, at Bell Block a couple of lieutenants commanded a compact little body of about fifty, and the same number, without any regular troops, defended Omata.\* Various skirmishes of varying importance occurred, and in November a decided success was won by the British troops at Mahoetahi. Two columns were ordered to attack. The first, from New Plymouth under General Pratt, including a hundred and thirty Militia, and some twenty of the newly-organized Mounted Corps; the second column, from Waitara under Colonel Mould, was to be employed in cutting off any fugitives. It does not seem as though any Militia accompanied this column. Efforts were at first made to drive the enemy from their position by a sharp fire from the Artillery; this proving unsuccessful, some of the 65th and the Taranaki Militia were ordered to storm, which they did in good style. There was never any question as to the courage of the Maoris, and on this occasion they gave additional proof of it. They obstinately stood their ground for some time, pouring in a fire which caused some loss to our force, but before long they were driven off at the point of the bayonet. They attempted to conceal themselves in the dry grass about the swamp, but this was effectually prevented by the Militia, who set fire to it, causing the Maoris to make a final dart for escape. The well-chosen positions of the troops prevented all hope of this being achieved, and they were eventually entirely defeated with heavy loss in killed, wounded and prisoners. On our side only four were killed, of whom two were Volunteers, and sixteen wounded. A few of the Mounted Corps took part in the capture of the Matarorikoriko Pa in the following December, and on the return of the troops which had been sent to Auckland, many of the other Militia took part in the closing incidents of the war, which practically terminated in January, 1861. The mounted Corps above mentioned had, in a very short time, acquired a high character. Colonel Carey, who is certainly not given to indiscriminate eulogy where the Militia are concerned, has nothing but praise for the Taranaki Mounted Volunteers, a corps about thirty strong, who under the command of Captain De Vœux, "did most valuable service. They were badly armed, and badly clothed, but they were well mounted, plucky and always ready. Even in the most dangerous times they rode long distances, carrying orders day or night, alone or in twos. It was with these mounted men that the communication with New Plymouth and Kahihi was kept up, as it afterwards was between the Waitara and the redoubts, where, anxious

\* The actual effective number in each district was probably less.

to work and ever fearless of danger, they were invaluable. One of them, Mr. Mace, an excellent rider, was the pluckiest fellow I ever met." When hostilities recommenced in 1863, we find the Militia and Volunteers in a very much more advanced state of organization. We meet names still familiar to those acquainted with the military history of the Colony. The Taranaki Mounted Volunteers and the Taranaki Militia have been already noticed; amongst the corps which now claim our attention are the Forest Rangers, the Wellington Rangers, the Wellington Rifles, the Patea Cavalry and Rifles, the Auckland Militia, the Waeroa Rifles and others, with the Cavalry troops known as the Colonial Defence Force. In the earlier part of 1863, skirmishes occurred at various places, including Wairoa Stream, Katikara, Stone Depot, Cameron Town, Pukekohe and elsewhere, in which the Forest Rangers and Defence Corps proved of the greatest service. Of these Bush Rangers it was said that they were more dreaded by the Maories than any two British regiments. Used to bush life they scoured the country far and near, swooping upon the enemy at all sorts of unexpected places and times, threading the thickest bush and suddenly appearing in their midst, when the Maories fancied them miles away. In fact, they fought the natives after their own fashion, keeping them "in such a constant state of alarm that they dared not even sleep in their pas."

On the 23rd of October the Militia had a smart fight to themselves, in which they had rather the worst of it. Lieutenants Lusk and Percival, who were in command at the Mauku Stockade, determined to attack a strong marauding party of the enemy who were making a raid in the neighbourhood. The Maoris were in very superior numbers and forced our men to retreat after some desperate fighting. Lieutenants Percival and Norman with six rank and file were killed, and four wounded.

As illustrative of the peculiar style of Maori warfare, a more detailed account of this action will not be out of place. The total number of our men engaged was about sixty, the advance guard being led by Lieutenant Percival. At the first impact he was for a time repulsed and driven back on the main body, "and the firing on both sides became very heavy, but our men advanced and drove the enemy back into some open ground. Here, Maori-like, they wheeled round the left flank of the Militia, and taking cover behind some fallen timber, opened such a heavy fire that Lieutenant Lusk was obliged to withdraw his men. No sooner was this movement observed by the enemy than they charged out, and for some minutes there was rather close firing, in which both parties suffered despite the excellent cover afforded by the logs and stumps. The superior numbers of the Maories now enabled them to outflank the Militia on both sides, and our

men were forced back into the forest, where they reformed," expecting a fresh attack, which, however, never came.

But in the following December, the Forest Rangers under Captain Jackson gave the enemy a generous return in kind. With a force of under thirty men he surprised a party of some fifty Maoris, and dispersed them with considerable loss. Not long after, at Rangiahia, the Rangers and other Militia were again actively engaged, Captain Heaphy gaining a Victoria Cross for his very distinguished gallantry. The incident is thus described by Alexander:—

"Captain Heaphy, of the Auckland Volunteers, took charge of a party and ably directed it, and Captain Jackson, with twenty men of the Forest Rangers, was of great assistance. Captain Von Tempski of the same corps relieved the soldiers who had been skirmishing for four hours. Captain Heaphy, in gallantly assisting a soldier of the 40th, who had fallen wounded into a hollow, became a target for a volley from the Maoris, at short range. His clothes were riddled with balls, and he was wounded in three places. He was recommended for and obtained the Victoria Cross, having continued to aid the wounded till the end of the day."

General Cameron said that the Colonial Defence Force, under the command of Colonel Nixon, had attained a high state of discipline and efficiency, and they displayed the greatest spirit and gallantry on this occasion. Unfortunately their brave leader was killed, and in the furious attempt to avenge his death, many of his troopers met with a similar fate. A few hours afterwards, however, a reconnoitring party under Captain McDonnell attacked a considerable number of the enemy, inflicting severe punishment.

In March a force was organized to attack the enemy's position at Ahu Ahu, an elevated stronghold of considerable strength. The regulars consisted of the 57th, divided into two parties, under Captains Russell and Schomberg, who were supported by Captains Carthew and Mackellar, of the Taranaki Militia. "The two parties meeting at the top of the ascent, a sharp fire was opened on them by about twenty or thirty Maoris, from a bush-covered hillock on the right of the pa. Two men were wounded, and the horse of Captain Mace of the Taranaki Militia, whilst the soldiers proceeded to cut down the stockade and make a passage into the interior, when the Maoris made a rapid retreat up a steep and wooded hill in the rear."

On the following day, it was determined to assault Kaitake. "It was arranged that Captain Atkinson, with one hundred and fifty men of the Taranaki Rifle Volunteers,

should gain the enemy's rear by a bush path; that Captain Corbett, with sixty men of the Taranaki Militia, should advance on the left; Captain Schomberg, 57th, and Captain Page, Taranaki Militia, should threaten on the right with one hundred men, whilst Captain Russell, 57th, Captain Wright, 70th, and Mackellar, Taranaki Militia, with twenty-five men each, in support of Captain Lloyd, proceeded up several small spurs on the left, to take in reverse the rifle-pits in front of two pas which crowned the crest of the hill."

In March, of the same year, occurred an incident which gained for Sir J. McNeill (one of her Majesty's equerries in ordinary) his Victoria Cross, and in which two of the Colonial Defence Force, Troopers Vosper and Gibson, were most creditably engaged. The two men were acting as escort to Lieutenant-Colonel McNeill—as he then was—on some duty which took him to a place called Te Awamatu. On returning, and when near the camp of some of the 40th at Ohanpu, they were surprised by about a hundred Maoris. Gibson was despatched for assistance, but before it could arrive Colonel McNeill saw that "there was nothing for it but flight." Scarcely had they started on their race for dear life, when Vosper's horse fell, throwing his rider, towards whom the enemy immediately rushed. Colonel McNeill returned, caught Vosper's horse, and assisted the gallant fellow to mount, the while that a heavy fire was being poured on them almost at pistol range. Fortunately both escaped.

On the occasion of the storming of Orakau, Major Hurford, of the Militia, distinguished himself. He held a salient and important position throughout the siege, repulsing many an attack which, if successful, would have entirely ruined our prospect of victory. When the general assault was ordered, he led his men amongst the advanced troops and was desperately wounded. In this brilliant affair the Colonials had five killed and eight wounded. In April, the 3rd Waikato Militia, under Major Co.ville, had a skirmish with the enemy, previous to which the Major had a narrow escape of capture by an ambushed party. The Military Settlers were enrolled early in April, 1864, and experienced a fierce *baptême de feu* a few months later at Ahu Ahu. Captains Lloyd and Page, with whom was Lieutenant Cox, were in command of a detachment of the Settlers and H.M. 57th regiment, engaged in foraging and destroying the enemy's crops, when they were suddenly surrounded by a strong force of Maories. The retreat that followed was, to put it euphemistically, hurried to the last degree. Captain Lloyd stood his ground, "and was killed fighting bravely." Captain Page made his way with a few men to the redoubt at Poutuku. Lieutenant Cox, who had been

absent when the attack was made, managed to elude the enemy by taking to the bush, and thence reached Taranaki, where he gave the alarm. "The Forest Rangers under Major Atkinson, always ready, were ordered to the scene of action," and were able to gather together the scattered members of the party. Our loss in killed and wounded was nineteen. The Forest Rangers are heard of again at a place called Te Matata, where, under Majors Hay and McDonnell, they utterly routed a body of the enemy, inflicting a loss of several killed, and an unknown number wounded.

What Gudgeon designates "the last engagement in which the Colonial Forces took part under General Cameron's command," occurred in March, 1865. Two companies of Rangers, with whom were some of the Waikato Militia, were detailed to act as scouts, and to meet the Maoris with their own tactics. While acting in this capacity, Major Tempsky discovered an approach to the village of Kakaramea, which was occupied by the enemy in some strength. The track led up the face of a steep cliff, and was facilitated by ladders which the natives had placed in the most precipitous parts of the ascent. Only seventy men were taken, Major Tempsky leading in person, and of this number twenty were left at the foot of the cliff to cover a retreat should such be necessary. So difficult was the path that it was broad daylight when the gallant band reached the village, which they found deserted, though it was ascertained that the Maoris were not far off. Tempsky determined to attack them, and directed his men to scale a barricade which had been hastily erected. While doing this they were seen by the enemy, who immediately fired, killing an officer named Whitfield, and another trooper, and wounding Captain George. An attempt to carry the position was made by Lieutenant Woolrup, but owing to the configuration of the clearing, it failed, and Major Tempsky determined to retreat. The losses on each side are believed to have been about equal. In the following July the Forest Rangers, under Majors Rookes and McDonnell, attacked the Areiahi village, which was taken without bloodshed, a similar good fortune attending the operations against the Weraroa.

The next episode of interest was the defence of Pipiriki by Captain Brassey, and its relief by Captain McDonnell. The garrison consisted of some two hundred Colonists, the Taranaki Military Settlers, and the relieving force was composed of the Forest Rangers, the Wanganui Bush Rangers, and some friendly natives. The siege was an exciting one for those engaged. On the 19th of July Lieutenant Chapman, an officer of the corps of Bush Rangers in the garrison, while strolling towards the enemy's pickets, was surprised by a party of the enemy lying in ambush, who gave chase, fortunately

abstaining from firing, knowing that the report would put the garrison on the alert. He distanced his pursuers, and then it became evident that the enemy meant mischief. They established themselves at several points of vantage, and made such good practice with their firearms that Captain Newland, in command of the Bush Rangers, had to sally out and dislodge them. When it came to close quarters the enemy gave way, and Newland had no difficulty in making good his position. A similar success attended Lieutenant Clery, who, at the head of forty men, dislodged the besiegers from a strong position they had taken up on the Cemetery Hill, overlooking our main redoubt, though in the sortie the Lieutenant was wounded.

In September what is known as the Opotiki Expedition to avenge the cruel murder of Mr. Volekner was resolved on, the Colonial forces engaged in which were the Military Settlers, the Bush Rangers, the Wanganui Cavalry, and the Patea Rangers. The Opotiki village, described as the largest Maori settlement in New Zealand, was captured without loss, though several hairbreadth escapes are recorded. Ensign Northcroft was hit on the buckle of his belt, and one of the men "had a bullet pass between his foot and the sole of his boot. . . . McDonnell had a bullet enter his cartridge box which knocked all his cartridges to pieces, and passed out over his hip, unpleasantly near, but without wounding him." An attack was subsequently made on one of the Pua pas, in which Major McDonnell, Major George, Captain Percy of the Yeoman Cavalry, and Lieutenant Gudgeon were engaged. Owing to some misunderstanding nothing was achieved, though Captain Percy was somewhat seriously wounded. Shortly afterwards an attack was made on another pa, and some sharp fighting took place. Major McDonnell had another narrow escape, his rifle being struck in his hand. At first he had only taken about forty men, and the numbers of the enemy began to threaten them seriously, when the Yeoman Cavalry, followed by Captain Ross with the Patea and Wanganui Rangers, came up, and soon put a different complexion on the state of affairs. Presently, too, a company of the Military Settlers arrived, and it was determined to take the pa by *coup de main* on the following day. A somewhat amusing incident—which, however, might well have terminated more seriously—is described by Lieutenant Gudgeon, who it will be remembered was one of the officers engaged. "About 8 o'clock in the evening a voice was heard from the pa asking whether McDonnell was present; the Major answered it himself. The speaker then said that they wished to give in, and asked what terms would be given them; the major answered, 'Unconditional surrender; those men who have been implicated in Volekner's murder would be tried, those who have not

will be simply prisoners of war.' Feeling as they must that they were all more or less guilty, the reply rather frightened them, and they requested an hour to deliberate thereon. This was granted, and hostilities ceased for a time. It is an old saying that a little learning is a dangerous thing, and the truth of it was experienced on this occasion, for one of the junior officers, understanding a little Maori, heard them talking about peace and concluded that a sort of millennium had arrived; so he left his post, went up to the pa, and shook hands most affectionately with many of the enemy. He even allowed them to pull down some of the palisades, so that they might come out to their Pakeha friends. It did not strike this too confiding officer that the narrow gateway of the pa was wide enough to allow them to come out as prisoners, but not wide enough for them to charge out as foes. No sooner was the opening finished than they fired a volley and charged out through the breach they had made, knocking down the dupe of an officer, and rushed upon some twenty men of the Patea Rangers who, having a youthful officer of anything but a confiding disposition, were busy entrenching their portion of the lines. The suddenness of the attack allowed no time for consideration, carbines, revolvers, and spades alike proved useful, and although the twenty men were knocked down and trampled upon, they hit hard, and left fifteen of the enemy dead in a very small space, while they themselves escaped with a few severe wounds.\* The following morning, when all was ready for an attack, the pa was found deserted.

Passing over for the present the occurrences of the next few months, we will take up our narrative of the New Zealand forces in 1868, when they were engaged at Poverty Bay. Majors Biggs and Fraser and Lieutenant Wilson with the Defence Force, the Military Settlers, the Forest Rangers, and other Colonial corps, were ordered to attack Kereopa, who was inciting the natives to murder Bishop Williams. Lieutenant Wilson, with a party of the Military Settlers, had a desperate fight, being surprised by a strong force of the enemy from behind while another threatened him on the flank. He gave the order to "fix bayonets and charge," and dashed across the face of the pa, exposed to a heavy fire and closely pursued. It was running the gauntlet with a vengeance, but it was his only chance. The loss was heavy, six men were killed and five wounded, rather more than a third of the detachment. Amongst the killed was Sergeant Doonan. In the result the enemy were utterly defeated with very trifling loss to the Colonial troops. About this time, too, Sergeant Walsh of the Defence Force gained for

\* "Reminiscences of the War in New Zealand," T. W. Gudgeon—a valuable work to which the writer is indebted for much interesting information.



himself a name for courage which is yet scarcely forgotten. He and a friend were doing a little private prospecting for petroleum, when they were surprised by a body of the enemy. Their carbines and horses they had left in charge of a boy who had been seen by the natives and forced to fly. Walsh and his friend, Espie, had only their revolvers with them when attacked by the enemy, who first made their presence known by a volley, which wounded Walsh in the forehead and hand, and broke Espie's arm. Soon Walsh received another wound and then two more. "As a climax, a fellow armed with a short fowling-piece ran close to him and fired, the muzzle almost touching his chest. To Walsh's astonishment the only effect was a nasty burn; the bullet must have fallen out." He thereupon closed with his enemy and knocked him down with the butt end of his revolver. This evidence of vigour in a man who had at least five bullet wounds proved, as Gudgeon puts it, too much for Maori philosophy, and the enemy were seized with a panic and fled, leaving their horses and their prostrate comrade. Walsh and Espie thereupon tied a rope round their prisoner, and set off for camp, which they eventually reached. As the historian well puts it, this was "a wonderful instance of courage and endurance, eclipsing everything in the Maori war," and, indeed, reminding us of some of the heroic encounters fought, single-handed, by officers and men in the Indian Mutiny. Walsh, it must be remembered, was wounded badly in five places; notwithstanding this he beat off nine men, took one prisoner, and, exhausted as he was, dragged him a distance of thirty miles to camp.

Going back somewhat in point of date we will now glance at the achievements of the Colonists in the operations against the West Coast tribes. Early in January, 1866, the Forest Rangers were attached to General Chute's column before Te Putahi. The fight was a severe one. Major McDonnell was wounded, and not long after the Forest Rangers, under Von Tempsky, had a brisk skirmish with the enemy, in which there were a good many lives lost on both sides. Then, again, there was the fighting between the Rivers Waitotara and Waingongoro, in which the Patea and Wanganui Bush-Rangers, the Yeomanry Cavalry, and two companies of the Military Settlers from Taranaki were engaged under Colonel Macdonald. In this place we may note that a very few months later the Colonial forces lost one of the best of their regiments, namely the Patea Rangers. The cause of their resignation was a disagreement with Government as to remuneration. In the summary we have before given of the Australian regiments generally, mention has been made of the fact that grants of land were made as inducement or reward to the Militia. The grievance of the Patea Rangers arose from a

misunderstanding—to use a somewhat mild term—on the part of the Government. The facts are thus put by the author before quoted:—“At this period our force consisted almost entirely of Military Settlers, who had engaged to serve for a term of three years, at the expiration of which they were to receive a grant of land. Three of the best of these companies were with Macdonald; they had served the period for which they had enlisted, and considered that they were entitled to a further grant of land if they continued to serve. They accordingly asked for a further grant of ten acres for each year served over and above the period agreed upon. This demand was not exorbitant, the more so that Government had failed on their part to give the men possession of the land to which they were entitled. Yet the Government not only refused to do anything for the men, but replied that they might leave the service if they did not choose to wait until the land was ready for them.” As a consequence the Patea Rangers, probably, says Gudgeon, the best corps ever raised in New Zealand, resigned in a body.

Some of the Forest Rangers were engaged under Captain Newland in the important capture of the village of Te Pungarehu, in which Ensign Northeroft particularly distinguished himself, as did Privates Rushton and White, who had been non-commissioned officers in the Patea Rangers, and though like the rest of that corps, they had resigned as a protest against the action of the Government, remained with Macdonald's column as volunteers. Meanwhile, other Militia and Volunteers, with whom were the Constabulary, were engaged on the East Coast, and the records of the war make mention of the services rendered by the Opotiki Rangers who formed part of the force under Colonel St. John. Other disturbances took place at Napier, where Colonel Whitmore received orders to organize the Militia and Volunteers who, at Omaruni, contributed to the victory gained, the Volunteer Cavalry under Captain Gordon being specially prominent. Perhaps one of the severest struggles throughout the war, took place at Turu Turu Mokai in July, 1868, in which the Forest Rangers and the Wellington Rifles were engaged. Captain Ross, one of the best officers in the Colony, was killed, as were two non-commissioned officers, Macfaden and Blake, and seven others, several being badly wounded, and the whole party would have been slaughtered, had not Von Tempsky arrived with his men in the nick of time. The next important fight in which the Colonial troops were engaged was in the attack on Te Ngutu-o-te-Manu, where the Constabulary and the Rangers and Rifles from Wellington were engaged. In the second attack on this position our loss was very severe; Tempsky, Palmer, Hastings, Hunter, Buck, and many others were

killed, and it is regrettable to have to state, some of the Volunteers gave way to panic. The Armed Constabulary, however, under Captain Robert, and Volunteers Livingstone, Pope, and Blako behaved most gallantly.

In the attack on Moturua the Patea Rifles and Cavalry were engaged, together with companies of the Armed Constabulary, and it is recorded that, though the result was not satisfactory to our arms, the behaviour of the force was beyond all praise. The Kaiiwai Cavalry under Captain Newland, and the Wanganui Cavalry under Captain Fennimore, took part in some sharp skirmishing near Wanganui. The latter corps were the heroes of an unfortunate encounter near the enemy's fort at Tauranga-a-hika. The advanced guard very rashly galloped right up to the palisades, and fired their revolvers in the faces of the enemy. The reply was a volley by which Sergeant Maxwell who was in command was killed, and the others escaped with the utmost difficulty. Three horses were shot, one of them falling on his rider, Trooper Wright, but his brother seeing his peril, rode back, and after extricating him, took off the saddle and bridle and rode away with him. Trooper Lingard also distinguished himself by riding up to the palisades and cutting loose a Maori horse which was tethered to them, thus providing for a comrade the means of escape; for this action he received the New Zealand Cross.

We soon come across mention of the Poverty Bay Volunteers, in connection with the unfortunate fight at Ruakituri, but inasmuch as considerable blame was attached to the course they adopted on that occasion it cannot be said that this period of the war added much to their credit. Here, as in numerous other places, the Mounted Constabulary were the real backbone of the Colonial forces. In the attack on Ngatapa this fine body particularly distinguished themselves, two of their number, Constables Biddle and Black, having gained the New Zealand Cross.

Slowly but surely the opposition of the natives was being quelled, though much yet remained to do, in which the Armed Constabulary, the Patea Volunteers, and Kaiiwai Cavalry were employed. The turbulent Te Kooti was reduced for a time to submission, but other tribes still remained rebellious, and in the operations against these the principal forces employed on our side were the Armed Constabulary and the friendly natives. At Opepe in June, 1869, several troopers of the Bay of Plenty Cavalry were killed by subtilty; others of the local corps took part in what is known as the Patatea Campaign, with which campaign the services of the Militia and the Volunteers may be said to have terminated, what remained to be done towards the final and

complete pacification of the country being achieved by means of the friendly levies, of course under European guidance.\*

Space unfortunately prevents us dwelling on the various corps of Volunteers and Militia which are possessed by other parts of our Colonial Empire. It would be possible and of interest to describe the growth and condition of such forces as the Cavalry and Artillery of ANTIGUA, the Georgetown Militia and Rifle Volunteers of BRITISH GUIANA, the well-known Light Infantry of CEYLON, the Kingston, Portland, Trelawny, St. Catherine, St. Elizabeth and St. Mary Corps—including Mounted Troops and Artillery—of JAMAICA, the Artillery of HONG KONG, the Militia and Volunteers of ST. CHRISTOPHER and SINGAPORE, the TRINIDAD Rifles, and last but not least—seeing that they are borne on the Imperial Establishment—the Royal Artillery and Militia of MALTA. Of these last, indeed, much might be written.

The Royal Malta Fencible Artillery have the distinction of "Egypt, 1882," in commemoration of their service in Egypt during the months of August, September, and October of that year. In 1806 there was raised for local purposes a corps of "Maltese Artificers" which consisted of three companies. Of these two were disbanded in 1815, and the remaining one two years later. The Maltese Cross on the helmet reminds us irresistibly of the once famous knights whose power—formerly felt through all lands—is now represented by an honourable order of chivalry, the Grand Master of which is appointed by His Holiness the Pope. Doubtless they had a history to be proud of, these old knights who of yore held sway in their feudal pride where the Fencible Artillery of to-day keeps watch and ward for England. Even so comparatively recently as the commencement of the seventeenth century the Grand Master, as a Sovereign Power, had warred against the Algerians; Jerusalem, Acre, Rhodes owned their sway. In the Church of St. John "were hung the shields of four thousand knights, its marble floor was covered with the achievements of those who had gone, its dome was filled with the captured trophies of the infidels, while the unsullied banner of the order waved from the ramparts of Sant' Elmo and on the land were its warriors and on the sea floated its galleys."

The familiar eight limbs of the cross, are—so heralds tell us—commemorative of the Eight Beatitudes, and of the eight nations or languages which constituted the Order. These were originally Provence, Auvergne, France, Italy, Aragon, England,

\* The writer desires to acknowledge the ready and courteous assistance given by the Librarian to the Royal Colonial Institute, and by the Librarian and Officials at the Royal United Service Institute.

Germany, and Castile, and, on the suppression of the English branch, the Anglo-Bavarian. The British possession of Malta dates from the heroic days of Nelson, when the inhabitants begged Captain Ball, one of Nelson's officers, to assume the civil and military government of the island. This he consented to do, and was confirmed in his position by the King of Sicily and Lord Nelson. The annals of that time record the fact that the Knights of Malta were still a recognised force amongst the enemies of France. Picturesque warriors, too, they must have been with "the dark mantle of their order, having on the left shoulder the eight-pointed cross sewn in white velvet upon black cloth, the same sacred badge on the housings of their horses, in silver on their epaulettes, in red on the forage cap, in scarlet cloth on the tops of their white leather gauntlets." During the siege of Valetta, which was held by the French, Major Weir, of the Royal Marines, raised a Maltese regiment, "which he brought to a high state of discipline," and which served until General Pigot effected the entire reduction of the island. To some extent this gallant band may be considered as the predecessors of the present local forces of Malta.

With these we have completed our account, all too slight and insufficient, of the Colonial Forces of Her Majesty's Army. As in old days of adventure and exploration some rude lines on a makeshift chart, some daub of barbarous character on driftwood or boulder, led the searchers to explore the treasures of which it gave indication, so it is hoped this bare outline of the regiments which make good the boast that the Queen's morning drum is heard around the world, may stimulate interest in the annals of their history and achievements. Prone though the age is to deny sentiment and to sneer at faiths, the most thoroughgoing utilitarian can scarcely dismiss the consideration of Her Majesty's Colonial Forces without the conviction that their existence and efficiency make mightily for the greatest good of the greatest number. To some it is something more than a dream that, somewhen in the years to come, there shall arise one vast federated Power of liegemen to the crown of Great Britain, embraced by name as in fact in its sovereign sway, a Power whose strength shall suffice to bid wars to cease, to check the tyrant and free the oppressed, whose right none may question for none shall avail to resist her might, a Power that shall

"Serve as model to the mighty world  
And be the fair beginning of a time."

The cry for this is heard from beneath diverse skies, in varying vigour, and differing tones, but the burden of it is waxing stronger and stronger with the passage of the years.

True it is that amongst ourselves, within our own borders, are those who still stammer forth "craven fears of being great," or strive by flippant cynicism to sneer away the growing wish, but the vain shriekings of such are being lost in the solemn voice of the Past, the imperious cry of the Present, the swelling, prophetic murmur of the Future. A well-known writer tells in dainty verse how once, in his fancied world, there rose from the sea marge the wail

"There was a loved one,  
But cruel is she!  
She left lonely for ever  
The Kings of the Sea."

Our forefathers, veritable Kings of the Sea, wooed and won the "loved one," the fair maiden Honour, with her dower of pride and place and lands and wealth, by their strong arms and stronger will, by loyalty and consciousness of power and mission to rule; we have entered into their labours. Strong and self-reliant, we shall keep them ours for ever, and not lightly should word or measure be condoned which should estrange from us that winsome maiden, fair in the fearless old-fashion, whom our fathers sought

"And worshipped her by years of noble deeds,  
Until they won her."

Surety against the possibility of this, a reproof to those who would belittle our greatness, a menace to all who would attack it, are, the IMPERIAL AND COLONIAL FORCES OF HER MAJESTY'S ARMY.

# INDEX.

Aden Cavalry, 172  
 Africa South, Military Forces of, 287, 288  
 Africa, South, Early History of, 285  
 Akber, 89  
 Alberta Mounted Rifles, 231  
 Alexandra Rifles, 304  
 Alwal, 49  
 Amboor, Regiment of, 152  
 American Sympathy with Fenians, 211  
 Antigua Military Forces, 369  
 Arcot, Heroism of Sepoys at, 28  
 Artillery, Bengal, 83  
 Artillery, Bengal, Services of, 85  
 Artillery, Bombay Native, 172  
 Artillery, Madras, 136  
 Artillery Militia, Canada, 246—249  
 Artillery, Punjab Frontier Force, 86  
 Artillery, Regt. of Canadian, 243  
 Ashanti War, 12  
 Assam Light Infantry, 115  
 Assaye, Indian Cavalry at, 24  
 Atkinson, Major, Forest Rangers, 363  
 Australia, Early Volunteers of, 339  
 Australasian Cadets, 337  
 Australasian Colonies, 337

Baddjiboo, 10  
 Baker's Horse, 303  
 Bakery Hill, Battle of, 346  
 Ballarat, Disturbances in, 346  
 Barrackpore, 49  
 Bathurst, Excitement during Gold Fever, 342  
 Batoche, 228  
 Battleford Rifles, 227  
 Batty's Goorkhas, 118  
 Bay of Plenty Cavalry, New Zealand, 369  
 Beauharnois Militia, 206  
 Bechuanaland Border Police, 326, 330  
 Bechuanaland Field Force, Uniform of, 329  
 Beloochees, 187, 188  
 Belooch Horse, 171  
 Bengal Army, 32—39  
 Bengal Army, Composition of, 46  
 Bengal Army, History of, 42—127  
 Bengal Artillery, 83  
 Bengal Cavalry, Uniform of, 50  
 Bengal Engineers, 86  
 Bengal Infantry, 87  
 Bengal Sappers and Miners, 86  
 Bettington's Horse, 301  
 Bheer Bhut, Sepoy, 20th B.N.I., 182  
 Bhopal Battalion, 126  
 Biddle, Constable, New Zealand Constabulary, 369  
 Bird, Lieut. (former), 37th B.N.I., 95  
 Black Corps of Dragons, Pioneers, and Artificers, 7  
 Black, Cosotable, New Zealand Constabulary, 369  
 "Blue Puggarees" (Nourse's Horse), 321  
 Body Guard at Maharaipore, 49  
 Body Guard, Governor-General's, India, 48  
 Boers Firing on Flags of Truce, 325  
 Bombay Army, 164  
 Bombay Cavalry, 166—172

Bombay Governor's Body Guard, 165  
 Bombay Native Army, oath of, 181  
 Bombay Native Artillery, 172  
 Bombay Sappers and Miners, 173  
 Bombay Sepoys at Mangalore, 24  
 Boulton's Scouts, 220  
 Bourbon Fort, 1st West Indian at, 8  
 Briar Creek, 6  
 British Honduras, 11  
 Brock, Col., Death of, 200  
 Broon-ka-Pultan, 98  
 Brown, Trooper, C.M.R., 297  
 Bushrangers, 344, 345  
 Bushire, 20th Bomb. Nat.I., at, 182  
 Bussy, M., 91  
 Buxaries, 90

Cadets, Australasian, 337  
 Cadets, Gentlemen, Victoria, 345  
 Cadets, Victoria, 337  
 Cadets, Victorian, 337, 345  
 Camel Corps, First, of Modern Warfare, 35  
 Campbell, Lieut., 19th M.N.I., 156  
 Canada, 189—218  
 Canada, Constitution of Force, 193  
 Canada, Defences of, 192, 193  
 Canada, General List of Regiments, 239—241  
 Canada, Governor-General's Body Guard of, 240  
 Canada, Imperial Troops in, 242  
 Canada, Uniforms and Colours, 236  
 Canadian Cavalry, 245, 246  
 Canadian Cavalry, Opinion on, 243  
 Canadian Engineers, 249, 250  
 Canadian Infantry Militia, 250—282  
 Canadian Militia Artillery, 246—249  
 Canadian Rebellion of 1837, 208  
 Canadian Regiment of Artillery, 243  
 Canadian War of 1812, 198—208  
 Cape Mounted Police, 295  
 Cape Mounted Rifles, 288, 289  
 Cape Regiments, 326  
 Caps, The History of, 283—287  
 Carrington, Sir F., 295, 300, 326, 328  
 Carrington's Horse, 295, 301, 302, 328  
 Cashmere Gate, Bengal Engineers at, 87  
 Cavalry, Indian, Achievements of, 41  
 Cavalry, Madras, 131—136  
 Central Indian Horse, 81, 82  
 Ceylon, 5  
 Ceylon Regiments, 40, 369  
 Channer, Major, 1st Goorkhas, 117  
 Charaslah, Goorkhas at, 119  
 Charrie Yarie Battalion, 98  
 Chasseurs Canadiens, 256  
 Chateaugay, Battle of, 206  
 Cheetoo, 48  
 Clark, Miss, Pretoria, 317  
 Clarke Walpole, 2nd B.N.I., 175  
 Clerly, Lieut., Forest Rangers, 365  
 Clive, Robert, taken Prisoner, 129  
 Coke's Rifles, 123  
 Colonial Assistance to the Empire, 40, 348—352  
 Colonial Defence Force, New Zealand, 360, 361  
 Colonial Empire, 4  
 Cook, Captain, 5th Goorkhas, 126

Constabulary, Armed, New Zealand, 335, 368, 369  
 Craun-ka-Pultan, 103  
 Cross, Maltese, Significance of, 370  
 Cubitt, Lieut., Regiment of Lucknow, 108  
 Cullen, Ensign, 1st West Indian Regt., 11  
 Cureton's Horse, 68  
 Cut Knife Hill, Battle of, 216

Daly, Lieut., 1st Punjab Cavalry, 77  
 Danagher, Trooper, Nourse's Horse, 322  
 D'Arcy's Horse, 301, 317  
 Daunt, Lieut., 11th B.N.I., 105  
 Defences, Australasian, 355  
 Deolee Irregular Force, 82, 126  
 Disney, Major, on Victorian Forces, 352  
 Dominica, 5  
 Downie, Capt. H., 1st West Indian Regt., 8  
 Dubrai, Defence of, 181  
 Duck Lake, 218  
 Dufferin, Lord, on Canada, 282  
 Duplex, M., 91  
 Durban Mounted Rifles, 304

Eccles Hill, 255  
 Egyptian Campaign, Australian Participation in, 348—352  
 Egyptian War, Australian Contingent, 350  
 Eighteenth (Alipore) Bengal Native Infantry, 109  
 Eighteenth Bengal Lancers, 70  
 Eighth Bengal Cavalry, 58  
 Eighth Bengal Native Infantry, 103  
 Eighth Punjab Native Infantry, 178  
 Eighth Madras Native Infantry, 148  
 Eleventh Bengal Native Infantry, 104  
 Eleventh Madras Native Infantry, 152  
 Eleventh (Prince of Wales' Own) Bengal Cavalry, 63  
 Engineers, Bengal, 96  
 Engineers, Canada, 249, 250  
 Erinpoorah Irregular Force, 82, 126

Faithfull Family, Murder of, 110  
 Fane's Horse, 70  
 Fenian Invasion of Canada, 251  
 Ferreira's Horse, 301  
 Ferozeshah, 49  
 Ferozepore Sikhs, 106  
 Fifteenth Bengal Cavalry (Cureton's Mooltanee), 68  
 Fifteenth Bengal Native Infantry, 107  
 Fifteenth Madras Native Infantry, 155  
 Fifth Bengal Cavalry, 56  
 Fifth Bengal Native Light Infantry, 100  
 Fifth Bombay Cavalry (Jacob-ka-Risala), 171  
 Fifth Bombay Native Light Infantry, 177  
 Fifth Goorkha Regiment, 125  
 Fifth Madras Native Infantry, 146  
 Fifth Punjab Infantry, 125  
 Fifth Punjab Cavalry, 81

- Fifty-sixth Bengal Native Infantry (former), 96  
 First Bengal Cavalry, 50  
 First Bengal Native Infantry, 92, 96  
 First Bengal Native Infantry (former), 90  
 First Bengal Native Infantry (former), Services of, 92  
 First Bombay Lancers, 166  
 First Bombay Native Infantry (Grenadiers), 173  
 First Goorkha Regiment, 117  
 First Madras Lancers, 134  
 First Madras Native Infantry and Pioneers, 142  
 First Punjab Cavalry, 77  
 First Punjab Infantry, 122  
 First Sikh Cavalry, 63  
 First Sikh Infantry, 121  
 First West Indian Regiment, 6  
 Fish Creek, 223  
 Fitzgerald, Capt., 12th B.N.I., 179  
 Fitz-Herbert, Humphrey, claims Cape, 283  
 Flint, Lieut., 14th M.N.I., 154  
 Florida, 5  
 Forest Rangers, 361  
 Fort Pitt, 231  
 Fortieth (Shahjehanpore) Bengal Native Infantry, 115  
 Forty-fifth Bengal Native Infantry, 116  
 Forty-fourth Bengal Native Infantry, 115  
 Forty-second Bengal Native Infantry, 115  
 Forty-third Bengal Native Infantry, 115  
 Fosberry, Lieut., 1st P.I., 123  
 Fourteenth Bengal Cavalry, 67  
 Fourteenth Bengal Native Infantry, 106  
 Fourteenth Bombay Native Infantry, 180  
 Fourteenth Madras Native Infantry (Wahab), 153  
 Fourth Bengal Cavalry, 55  
 Fourth Bengal Native Infantry, 98  
 Fourth Bombay Cavalry, 169  
 Fourth Bombay Native Infantry Rifle Corps, 176  
 Fourth Goorkhas, 119  
 Fourth (Madras) Light Cavalry (Prince of Wales' Own), 136  
 Fourth Madras Native Infantry, 146  
 Fourth Punjab Infantry, 124  
 Fourth Sikhs, 122  
 France, Wars with, 5  
 Frog Lake, Massacre at, 231  
 Frontier Armed and Mounted Police, (Cape) 290, 291  
 Frontier Light Horse, 301, 302, 311  
 Frontier Light Horse, Officers of, 303  
 Fusiliers of London, Canada, 220
- Gandier, Trooper, Weatherley's Horse, 310  
 Gibraltar, 5  
 Gibson, Trooper, Colonial Defence Force, New Zealand, 362  
 Giffan Family, Murder of the, 356  
 Gill, Sergeant, 15th B.N.I., 107  
 Gillis-ka-Pultan, 90  
 Glengarries, The, 203  
 Gold Coast Artillery Corps, 40  
 Gold, Discovery of, Australia, 341—344  
 Goorkha Regiments, 117—119  
 Goorkha Light Infantry, 116  
 Goorkhas, The, 36  
 Gough's Horse, 301, 328  
 Governor's Body Guard, Bombay, 165  
 Governor-General's Body Guard, India, 48  
 Governor's Body Guard, Madras, 131  
 Governor-General's Foot Guards, Canada, 250  
 Grenada, 5  
 Griqualand West, Operations in, 327  
 Guadana, Battle of, 293  
 Guiana British Military Forces, 369  
 Guides March to Delhi, 74
- Guides (Queen's Own), Corps of, 73  
 Guttrie-ka-Pultan, 98
- Halifax Artillery, 220  
 Halifax Battalion of Rifles, 269—271  
 Hall, Volunteer, Mounted Rifles, 323  
 Hamilton Volunteers, 212  
 Harrel, Capt., Bechuanaland Volunteers, 328  
 Hartley, Surgeon-Major, C.M.R., 296  
 Hazara Goorkhas, 125  
 Heaphy, Capt., Auckland Volunteers, 361  
 Herchmer, Col., N.W. Mounted Police, 281  
 Hilliard-ka-Pultan, 99  
 Hills, Lieut., B.I.A., 85  
 Hodson, Major, 61, 62  
 Hodson's Horse, 58—63  
 Hong Kong Military Forces, 469  
 Horse Artillery, Bengal, 84  
 Huntingdon Borderers, Canada, 265  
 Hurford, Major, Taranaki Militia, 362  
 Hyderabad Contingent, 128  
 Hyderabad Cavalry Contingent, 82
- Ibeka, 293  
 Inderbir Lama, 2nd Goorkhas, N.S.  
 India, British acquisition of, 13—17  
 Indian Army, Achievements of, 23—32  
 Indian Army, Composition of, 18—22  
 Indian Cavalry, 41, 42  
 Indian Regiment, Cavalry, Establishment of, 22  
 Indian Regiment, Infantry, Establishment of, 22  
 Infantry School Corps, Canada, 244  
 Inhlobane, Battle of, 307  
 Inns, Lieut., Bengal Engineers, 87  
 Irregulars, Indian, 31
- Jacob's Rifles, 188  
 Jamaica Military Forces, 369  
 Jamaica, Rebellion in, 11  
 Jansin-kee-Pultan, 100  
 Jats, The, 37  
 Jellalabad, Heroism of Sepoys at, 95
- Kaffrarian Rifles, 314  
 Kaiiwa Cavalry, 369  
 Kaitake, 362  
 Kafir Police, 289  
 Kemaon Battalion, 118  
 Khelat i-Ghilzie Regiment, 105  
 King, Mr.; his Ride, 286  
 Kingston Artillery, 220  
 Kingston Military College, 234  
 Kirkee, 13th Bomb. S.I. at, 179  
 Kororareka, Capture of, 355  
 Kyne-ke-Daheena Pultan, 101
- Lal Kahn, 3rd Bombay Cavalry, 168  
 Lal Pultan (Red) Regiment, 90  
 Lincoln Battalion, Canada, 262  
 Lincoln Regiment, 205  
 Lingard, Trooper, Wanganui Cavalry, 368  
 Longton, Beauharnois Militia, 206  
 Lonsdale's Horse, 301, 311  
 Loodiana's Sikhs, 107  
 Lower Canadian Rebellion, 208  
 Loyal Association, 341  
 Lucknow, Defence of, 108  
 Lucknow, Regiment of, 108  
 Lundy's Lane, Battle of, 207
- Macgregor, Lieut., Fane's Horse, 71  
 Macgregor's Leap, 356  
 Madras Army, 127  
 Madras Army, History of, 127—142
- Madras Artillery, 136  
 Madras Cavalry, 131—136  
 Madras, Governor's Body Guard, 131  
 Madras Infantry, 139—142  
 Mahomed Sherreef, Subadar-Major, 20th B.N.I., 182  
 Mahottah, Battle of, 360  
 Maharrata Horse, 70  
 Malagrah, Disastrous Expedition of West India Regiment against, 9  
 Malcolmson, Lieut., 3rd Bombay C., 168  
 Malcolm's Royal Rangers, 6  
 Malta, Knights of, 369, 370  
 Malta Military Forces, 369  
 Malwah Bheel Corps, 126  
 Malta, 5  
 Mangalore, Bombay Sepoys at, 24  
 Maories, Arms of, 358  
 Marie-Galante, Isle of, 1st West Indian at, 8  
 Marine Battalion, Bombay, 182  
 Matthews-ka-Pultan, Services of, 94  
 Matthews-ka-Pultan, 92  
 Mauki Stockale, Fight at, 360, 361  
 Ameer Munsoo, Madras Sepoy, 122  
 Melbourne Rifle Regiment, 333  
 Methuen's Horse, 301  
 Meywah Bheel Corps, 126  
 Mhawiwa Battalion, 127  
 Midland Battalion, 220  
 Military Settlers, New Zealand, 363  
 Minorca, 5  
 Mira's Regiment of Foot, 12  
 Mooksee, 49  
 Moore, Lieut., 3rd Bombay C., 167  
 Morosi's Mountain, 298  
 Moose Mountain Scouts, 220  
 Morris, Surgeon, 1st West Indian Regt., 11  
 Montreal Garrison Artillery, 220  
 Mounted Infantry, Canada, 241  
 Mounted Police, Australia, 313  
 Mounted Police, Frontier Armed and, 290  
 Mounted Police, North-West of Canada, 279—281  
 Mounted Rifles, Victoria, 353  
 Mount Royal Rifles, 220, 272  
 Murray's Jat Cavalry, 67  
 Mutiny, Indian, 18  
 Mutiny, Indian, Origin of, 34
- Napier of Magdala, Lord, Bengal Engineers, 87  
 Napier, Sir C., Comparison of European and Indian Cavalry, 38  
 Natal, Annexation of, 287  
 Natal Carabineers, 304, 305, 311  
 Natal Hussars, 304  
 Natal Light Horse, 303  
 Natal Military Forces, 288  
 Natal Native Horse, 305  
 National Debt, 4  
 Neelwur-ka-Pultan, 92  
 New Brunswick, 5  
 Newfoundland Company, 40  
 Newfoundland, 5  
 New South Wales Contingent, 350  
 New South Wales Contingent; Action of Colonial Government, 351, 352  
 New South Wales Military Force, 332  
 New Zealand Forces, 355  
 New Zealand Forces at Poverty Bay, 366  
 New Zealand Military Force, 335  
 Ngapata, 369  
 Nineteenth Bengal Cavalry, 70  
 Nineteenth Bengal Infantry (former), 49  
 Nineteenth (Punjab) Bengal Native Infantry, 109  
 Nineteenth Bombay Native Infantry, 180  
 Nineteenth Bomb.N.I. in Afghanistan, 181  
 Nineteenth Madras Native Infantry, 156



- "Ninety-six" Fort, 7  
 Ninth Bengal Cavalry, 58  
 Ninth Bengal Native Infantry, 104  
 Ninth Bombay Native Infantry, 178  
 Ninth Madras Native Infantry, 150  
 Nixon, Col., Colonial Defence Force, 362  
 Nordenfeldt Battery, Victoria, 354  
 Northeroft, Ensign, Forest Rangers, 367  
 North-West Rebellion, Canada, 217  
 Nourse's Horse, 301, 315, 320  
 Nova Scotia, 5  
 Nunn, Major, 1st West Indian Regt., 7
- Ochterlony-ka-Pultan, 96  
 O'Connell, Captain, 1st West Indian Regt., 3  
 O'Neil, The Fenian, 212—217  
 Ontario Rifles, 213  
 Opotiki Rangers, 368  
 Orange Walk, Gallantry of 1st West Indian at, 11, 12
- Papineau, Louis, 208  
 Patea Hush Rangers, 367  
 Pathans, The, 37  
 Peacock Throne, The, 15  
 Pelletier, Lieut., Voltigeurs de Quebec, 259  
 Peons, Madras, 131  
 Perambancan, 23  
 Permanent Corps, Canada, 235  
 Persia, Gulf of, Operations in, 183  
 Plassey, 23  
 Police, Hechmanaland, 326, 330  
 Police, Border, Australia, 341  
 Police, Frontier Armed and Mounted, (Cape), 292—300  
 Police, Indian, 35  
 Police, Mounted, Australia, 340  
 Police, North-West Mounted, Canada, 279  
 Police, North-West Mounted, Composition of, 279  
 Poona Horse, 169  
 Portland Island Company, 40  
 Precedence of Regiments, Canada, 236  
 Pretoria Rifles, 315  
 Pretoria Carabineers, 315, 319  
 Probyn, Dighton, 64  
 Probyn's Sikhs, 63, 64  
 Punjab Cavalry, Description of, 79  
 Punjab Cavalry, 73  
 Punjab Frontier Force, 119—126  
 Punjab Frontier Artillery, 86  
 Punjab Infantry, 109—115
- Quebec Artillery, 220  
 Quebec Cavalry School Corps, 243  
 Quebec Rifles, 213  
 Quebec School of Cavalry, 220  
 Queen's Own Rifles, Canada, 220, 251  
 Queensland Military Force, 333  
 Queenstown Heights, 199
- Raaf, Commandant, 324  
 Rachpal Singh, 4th Sikhs, 122  
 Rajpoots, The, 36  
 Rattray's Sikhs, 116  
 Red River Expedition, 212—217  
 Rennie, Col., Bengal Artillery, 85  
 Ridgeway, Battle of, 251  
 Riel, Rebellion of, 215—217  
 Rifles, Mounted, Victoria, 353  
 Roberts, Sir F. S., Bengal Artillery, 85  
 Rocky Mountain Rangers, 220  
 Royal Canadian Rifle Regiment, 237  
 Royal Canadians, 237  
 Royal Grenadiers, Canada, 220, 259  
 Royal Scots of Canada, 257  
 Ruakatura, 369
- Runjeet Singh, Havildar 3rd Bombay C., 168  
 Rushton, Private, Forest Rangers, 367
- Salaberry, Colonel De, 205  
 Sanctuary, Capt., Prel. Carabineers, 322  
 Sampson, Capt., Nourse's Horse, 318  
 Sappers and Miners, Bengal, 86  
 Sappers and Miners, Bombay, 173  
 Sappers and Miners (Madras) (the Queen's Own), 138  
 Sappers and Miners, Madras, Description of, 139  
 School of Cavalry, Quebec, 235  
 School of Infantry, Canada, 220  
 Scott, Capt., 4th Sikhs, 122  
 Scott, Murder of, 215  
 Scott, Sergeant, C.M.R., 297  
 Scratchley, Sir Peter; Scheme of Defence, 338  
 Second Bengal Cavalry, 51  
 Second Bengal Native Infantry (former), Gallantry of Native Officer in, 94  
 Second (The Queen's Own) Bengal Native Infantry, 97  
 Second Bombay Lancers, 166  
 Second Bombay Native Infantry (Prince of Wales' Own Grenadiers), 173  
 Second (Prince of Wales' Own) Goorkha Regiment, 118  
 Second Madras Lancers (Stevenson Pater), 134  
 Second Madras Native Infantry, 143  
 Second Punjab Cavalry, 80, 81  
 Second Punjab Infantry, 123  
 Second Sikh Cavalry, 65  
 Second (Hill) Sikh Infantry, 121  
 Second West Indian Regiment, 12  
 Second, Mrs., Service rendered by, 203  
 Seetabuldee, Madras Body-Guard at, 132  
 Sepoy Army, 16—18  
 Seringapatam, Sepoys at, 24  
 Seventeenth Bengal Cavalry, 70  
 Seventeenth (Loyal Poorbeah) Bengal Native Infantry, 109  
 Seventeenth Bombay Native Infantry, 180  
 Seventeenth Madras Native Infantry, 156  
 Seventh Bengal Cavalry, 58  
 Seventh Bombay Cavalry, 171  
 Seventh (Duke of Connaught's Own) Bengal Native Infantry, 103  
 Seventh Bombay Native Infantry, 177  
 Seventh Madras Native Infantry (Cooke), 148  
 Seven Years' War, 5  
 Shah Jehan, 86  
 Shekharawtee Battalion, 106  
 Shilling, Andreas, Claims Cape, 283  
 Short, Major, Canadian Artillery, 244  
 Sikh Infantry, First, 121  
 Sikh Regiments, 151  
 Sikhs, The, 36  
 Simcoe Rangers, 220  
 Singapore Military Forces, 369  
 Sirmoor Battalion, 118  
 Sixteenth Bengal Cavalry, 70  
 Sixteenth (The Lucknow) Bengal Native Infantry, 108  
 Sixteenth Bombay Native Infantry, 180  
 Sixteenth Madras Native Infantry (Lane), 156  
 Sixth (Prince of Wales') Bengal Cavalry, 57  
 Sixth Bengal Cavalry, Capture of Zangiz by, 58  
 Sixth Bengal Native Light Infantry, 101  
 Sixth Bombay Cavalry (Jacob-ka-Risala), 171  
 Sixth Bombay Native Infantry, 177  
 Sixth Madras Native Infantry (MacKenzie), 147  
 Sixth Punjab Infantry, 125
- Slettenkvon, Capt. Von, Frontier Horse, 308  
 Smyth, American General, 202  
 South Australia Military Force, 334  
 South Carolina Regiment, 6  
 Stanger Rifles, 304  
 Stapp, Captain, Taranaki Militia, 357  
 St. Charles, Defeat of Rebels at, 210  
 St. Christopher Military Forces, 369  
 St. Eustache, Defeat of Rebels at, 210  
 St. Helena Regiment, 40  
 Stono Ferry, 6  
 St. Vincent, 5  
 Sylhet Light Infantry, 115
- Taranaki Militia, 357—362  
 Taranaki Mounted Volunteers, 360  
 Taranaki War, 1850, 356  
 Tasmanian Forces, 337  
 Tasmanian Military Force, 336  
 Te Matau, 363  
 Templesy, Col., Death of, 368  
 Tenth Bengal Cavalry, 48  
 Tenth Bengal Native Infantry, 104  
 Tenth Bombay Native Light Infantry, 178  
 Tenth Madras Native Infantry, 151  
 Te Putahi, 367  
 Thackeray, Lieut., Bengal Engineers, 87  
 Third Bengal Cavalry, 32  
 Third Bengal Cavalry, Loyalty of, in Mutiny, 52, 83  
 Third Bengal Native Infantry, 98  
 Third Bombay Lancers (Queen's Own), 166  
 Third Bombay Native Light Infantry, 176  
 Third Goorkhas, 118  
 Third (Madras) Light Cavalry (Murray), 135  
 Third Madras (or Palnacottah) Light Infantry, 144  
 Third Punjab Cavalry, 80, 81  
 Third Sikh Infantry, 121  
 Thirteenth (Duke of Connaught's) Bengal Cavalry, 66  
 Thirteenth Bengal Native Infantry, 106  
 Thirteenth Bombay Native Infantry, 179  
 Thirteenth Madras Native Infantry (Alock), 153  
 Thirtieth (Punjab) Bengal Native Infantry, 114  
 Thirtieth Bengal Native Infantry, (former), 95  
 Thirtieth Bombay Native Infantry (3rd Belooch Battalion), 185  
 Thirtieth Madras Native Infantry, 162  
 Thirty-eighth (The Agra) Bengal Native Infantry, 115  
 Thirty-fifth Bengal Native Infantry, 115  
 Thirty-fifth Bengal Native Infantry (former), 95  
 Thirty-first (Punjab) Bengal Native Infantry, 114  
 Thirty-first Madras (or Trichinopoly) Light Infantry (Jeanneret), 163  
 Thirty-fourth Bengal Native Infantry (Pioneers), 115  
 Thirty-ninth (Allypurb) Bengal Native Infantry, 115  
 Thirty-second Madras Native Infantry (Dyce), 163  
 Thirty-second (Punjab) Bengal Native Infantry (Pioneers), 115  
 Thirty-seventh Bengal Native Infantry (former), 95  
 Thirty-seventh Bengal Native Infantry (The Dogras), 115  
 Thirty-sixth Bengal Native Infantry, 115  
 Thirty-third (Allahabad) Bengal Native Infantry, 115  
 Thirty-third Madras Native Infantry (Wahab), 163  
 Tobago, 5

- Tomason, Capt., on the Cape Irregulars, 302  
 Tombs, Major, R.H.A., 85  
 Topasses and Mistices, 127  
 Toronto, Queen's Own, 212  
 Transvaal Rangers, 311, 313  
 Transvaal War, Australian offers of Service, 348  
 Trinidad, 5  
 Trinidad Rifles, 369  
 Trout River, 265  
 Turu Turu Mokai, 368  
 Twelfth Bengal Cavalry, 65  
 Twelfth Bengal Native Infantry, 105  
 Twelfth Bombay Native Light Infantry, 178  
 Twelfth Madras Native Infantry, 153  
 Twentieth Bombay Native Infantry, 181  
 Twentieth (Duke of Cambridge's Own) (Punjab) Bengal Native Infantry, 110  
 Twentieth Madras Native Infantry, 157  
 Twenty-eighth Bombay Native Infantry, 187  
 Twenty-eighth Madras Native Infantry (Martin), 162  
 Twenty-eighth (Punjab) Bengal Native Infantry, 114  
 Twenty-fifth Bombay Native Light Infantry, 185  
 Twenty-fifth Madras Native Infantry (Kenny), 160  
 Twenty-fifth (Punjab) Bengal Native Infantry, 113  
 Twenty-first Bombay Native Infantry, 182  
 Twenty-first Bomb.N.I., Loyalty of at Kurachi, 184  
 Twenty-first Madras Native Infantry, 158  
 Twenty-first (Punjab) Bengal Native Infantry, 110  
 Twenty-fourth Bombay Native Infantry, 185  
 Twenty-fourth Madras Native Infantry (Maddonald), 160  
 Twenty-fourth (Punjab) Bengal Native Infantry, 113  
 Twenty-ninth (Duke of Connaught's Own) B. N. I. (2nd Belooch Regiment), 187  
 Twenty-ninth Madras Native Infantry (Maccloud), 162  
 Twenty-ninth (Punjab) Bengal Native Infantry, 114  
 Twenty-second Bombay Native Infantry, 184  
 Twenty-second Madras Native Infantry (Dalrymple), 159  
 Twenty-second (Punjab) Bengal Native Infantry, 111  
 Twenty-seventh Bengal Native Infantry (former), 94  
 Twenty-seventh Bombay Native Light Infantry (1st Belooch Regiment), 186  
 Twenty-seventh Madras Native Infantry (Lindsay), 161  
 Twenty-seventh (Punjab) Bengal Native Infantry, 114  
 Twenty-sixth Bombay Native Infantry, 186  
 Twenty-sixth Madras Native Infantry (Innes), 161  
 Twenty-sixth (Punjab) Bengal Native Infantry, 113  
 Twenty-third Bombay Native Infantry, 184  
 Twenty-third Madras (or Wallajahbad) Native Infantry, 159  
 Twenty-third (Punjab) Bengal Native Infantry, 112  
 Ulundi, Advance on, 312  
 Uys, Piet, Death of, 309  
 Victoria Cadets, 337  
 Victoria Military Force, 333  
 Victoria Mounted Rifles, 353  
 Victorian Forces, 352  
 Victorian Royal Volunteer Artillery Regiment, 333  
 Victoria Rifles (Cape), 304  
 Victoria Rifles of Canada, 255  
 Voltigeurs de Chateauguay, 274  
 Voltigeurs, 205  
 Vosper, Trooper, Colonial Defence Force, New Zealand, 362  
 Vouden, Maj., 1st Punjab Cavalry, 79  
 Waikato Militia, 363  
 Walkerstroom, 316  
 Walsh, Sergt., Defence Force, New Zealand, 366  
 Wandiwash, Battle of, 141  
 Wanganui Bush Rangers, 367  
 Warren, Sir C., 327  
 Waterkloof, The, 290  
 Watson, Lieut., 1st Punj. Cav., 77, 78  
 Weatherley, Col., 307, 309  
 Weld, Sir Frederick, on Unorganised Defence, 339  
 Wellesley-ka-Pultan, 149  
 Wellington Rifles, 368  
 Wells, Lieut., at Umzuitzani, 294  
 West Coast Operations, New Zealand, 367  
 Western Australia Military Force, 335  
 West Indian Regiment, 6  
 West Indian Regiments, Heroism of, at Baddiboo, 11  
 West Indian Regiment, 1st, Trophies of, 8  
 White, Private, Forest Rangers, 367  
 Wilson, Lieut., Military Settlers, New Zealand, 366  
 Winnipeg Light Infantry, 220  
 Winnipeg Rifles, 276-278  
 Wolseley, Lord, on New South Wales Contingent, 350  
 Woudley, Major, 19th Bomb.N.I., 181  
 Wright, Trooper, Wanganui Cavalry, 368  
 York and Caledonian Volunteers, 212  
 York Rangers, 220  
 York Volunteers, Canada, 200  
 Young's Horse, 136

THE END.

Defence  
Army, 79

New Zea-

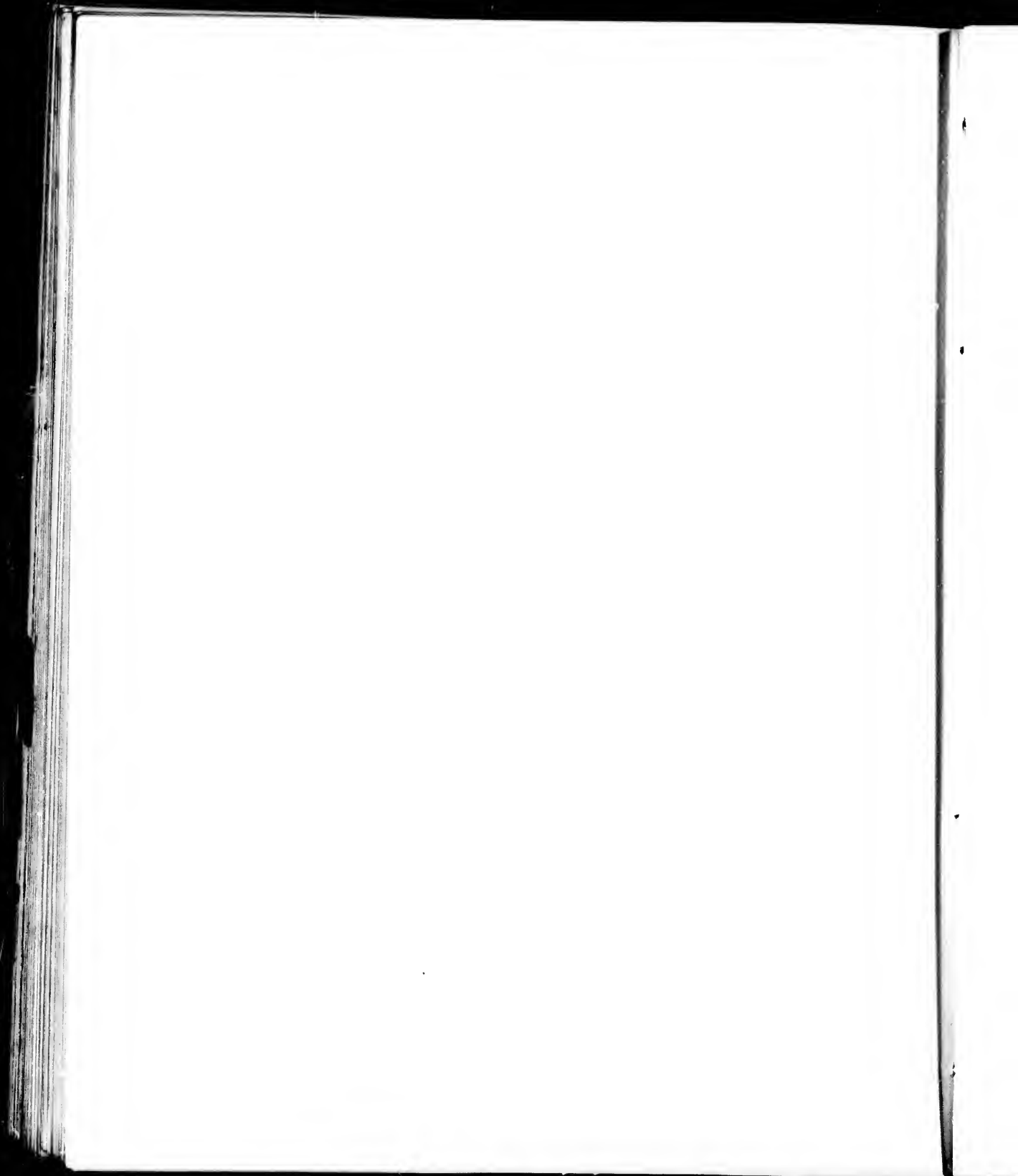
7, 78  
rganised

Zealand,  
e, 335  
n of, at  
rophies  
367  
s, New

Wales  
mb.N.I.,  
Army, 368

, 212

HER MAJESTY'S ARMY  
INDIAN AND COLONIAL FORCES



HER MAJESTY'S ARMY  
INDIAN AND COLONIAL  
FORCES

*A DESCRIPTIVE ACCOUNT*

OF THE

VARIOUS REGIMENTS NOW COMPRISING THE QUEEN'S FORCES IN  
INDIA AND THE COLONIES

BY

WALTER RICHARDS

*With Coloured Illustrations*

LONDON  
J. S. VIRTUE & CO., LIMITED  
294, CITY ROAD AND 26, IVY LANE

LONDON:  
PRINTED BY J. S. VIRTUE AND CO., LIMITED  
CITY ROAD.

# CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	1
WEST INDIAN REGIMENTS . . . . .	6
INDIAN ARMY. GENERAL DESCRIPTION . . . . .	13
BENGAL CAVALRY . . . . .	48
BENGAL ARTILLERY AND ENGINEERS . . . . .	83
BENGAL INFANTRY. INTRODUCTORY . . . . .	87
HISTORY OF BENGAL INFANTRY REGIMENTS . . . . .	96
MADRAS ARMY. INTRODUCTORY . . . . .	127
MADRAS CAVALRY, ARTILLERY, AND ENGINEERS . . . . .	134
MADRAS INFANTRY . . . . .	139
BOMBAY ARMY. INTRODUCTORY . . . . .	164
BOMBAY CAVALRY . . . . .	165
BOMBAY ARTILLERY AND ENGINEERS . . . . .	172
BOMBAY INFANTRY REGIMENTS . . . . .	173
MILITARY FORCES OF CANADA. INTRODUCTORY . . . . .	189
LOWER CANADIAN REBELLION AND FENIAN INROADS . . . . .	208
RED RIVER CAMPAIGN . . . . .	213
NORTH-WEST REBELLION OF 1885 . . . . .	217
COMPOSITION OF CANADIAN ARMY . . . . .	233
SOUTH AFRICAN FORCES. INTRODUCTORY . . . . .	283
CAPE MOUNTED RIFLES . . . . .	288
SOUTH AFRICAN FORCES. GENERAL DESCRIPTION . . . . .	300
AUSTRALASIAN FORCES . . . . .	331
NEW SOUTH WALES FORCES . . . . .	332
VICTORIAN FORCES . . . . .	333
QUEENSLAND FORCES . . . . .	334
SOUTH AUSTRALIAN FORCES . . . . .	334
WESTERN AUSTRALIAN FORCES . . . . .	335
NEW ZEALAND FORCES . . . . .	335

	PAGE
TASMANIAN FORCES . . . . .	336
COLONIAL CADETS . . . . .	337
EARLY TROUBLES IN AUSTRALIA . . . . .	339
NEW SOUTH WALES CONTINGENT . . . . .	348
GROWTH OF VICTORIAN FORCES . . . . .	352
SERVICES OF NEW ZEALAND MILITARY FORCES . . . . .	355
WAR IN NEW ZEALAND . . . . .	355
VARIOUS COLONIAL CORPS . . . . .	370
KNIGHTS OF MALTA . . . . .	370
MILITARY HISTORY OF MALTA . . . . .	370
CONCLUSION . . . . .	372

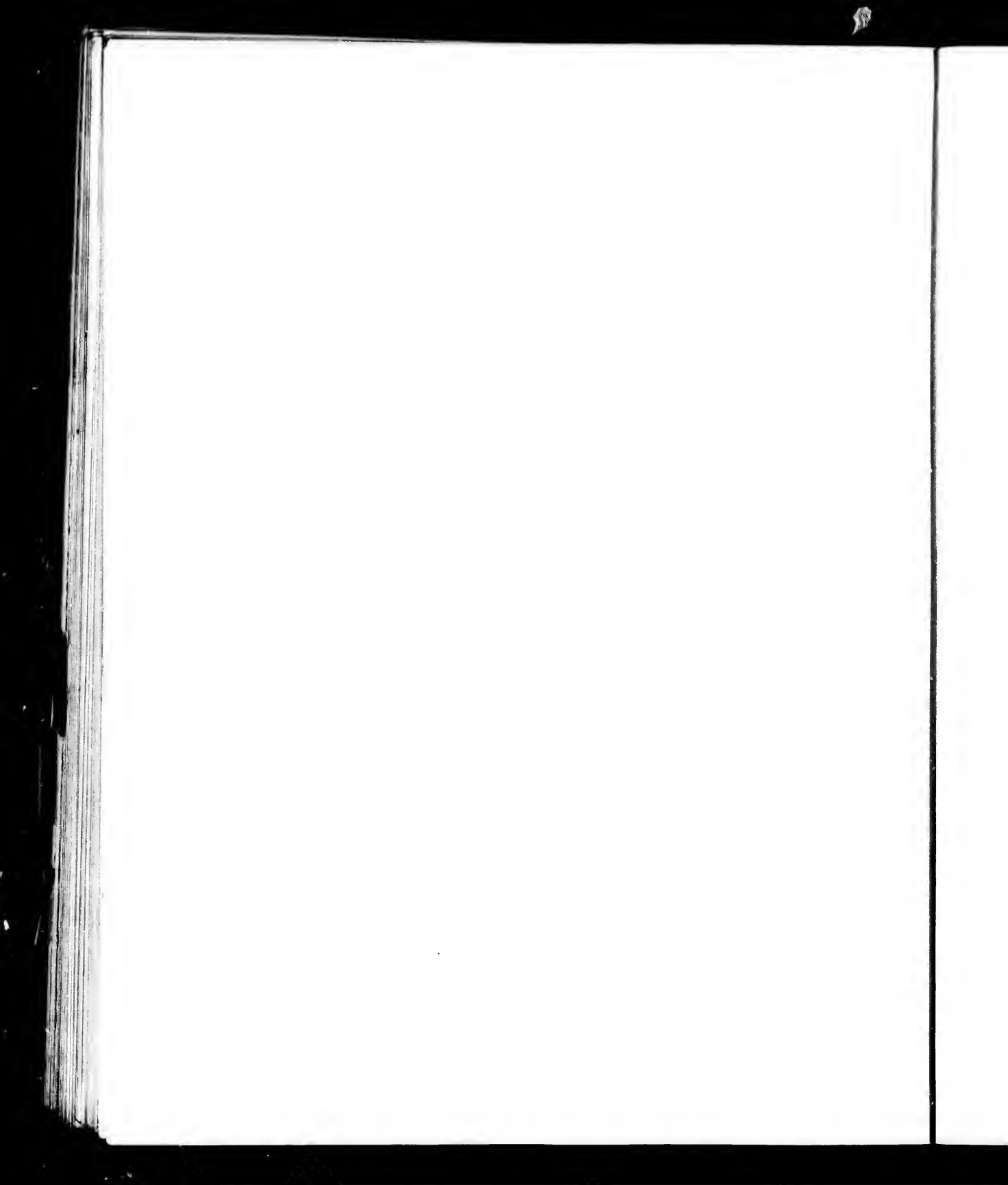


PAGE  
 336  
 337  
 339  
 348  
 352  
 355  
 355  
 370  
 370  
 370  
 372

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

---

	PAGE
THE GOVERNOR-GENERAL'S BODY GUARD (CALCUTTA) . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
THE 11TH BENGAL NATIVE INFANTRY . . . . .	<i>Vignette</i>
THE WEST INDIA REGIMENT . . . . .	<i>Facing Page</i> 6
THE 13TH BENGAL LANCERS . . . . .	" 66
THE 15TH SIKHS . . . . .	" 107
THE 3RD GOORKHAS . . . . .	" 118
THE 1ST MADRAS PIONEERS . . . . .	" 142
THE BOMBAY ARTILLERY . . . . .	" 172
THE HALIFAX GARRISON ARTILLERY . . . . .	" 193
THE 6TH REGIMENT OF CAVALRY (HUSSARS, CANADA) . . . . .	" 245
THE 2ND QUEEN'S OWN RIFLES (CANADA) . . . . .	" 251
THE 5TH ROYAL SCOTS OF CANADA (MONTREAL) . . . . .	" 257
THE CAPE MOUNTED RIFLES . . . . .	" 288
THE 1ST BATTALION (WEST MELBOURNE) VICTORIA INFANTRY . . . . .	" 333
THE VICTORIAN MOUNTED RIFLES . . . . .	" 353
THE VICTORIAN ARTILLERY . . . . .	" 354



*In Five Divisions at 6s. each ; or in Two Volumes, handsomely bound, cloth gilt, gilt edges, at 21s. each.*

# THE THAMES

*FROM ITS RISE TO THE NORE.*

BY WALTER ARMSTRONG, M.A.

ILLUSTRATED WITH NEARLY 400 ENGRAVINGS IN THE TEXT  
AND  
SIXTEEN ETCHINGS OR STEEL PLATES.

**I**N spite of all that has been written about the Thames, a book is still much wanted which shall take a reader to its source, and thence conduct him to the sea, noticing all that is notable on its banks, or within a short walk of them, and putting into a concise and complete form the mass of association which has gathered about our noble river. Such a want the present work is designed to supply.

The writer has put himself in the place of one starting from the rise of the stream in the Gloucestershire meadows, and has followed its course, first on foot, and then, when it becomes navigable, in a boat, down to its disappearance in the sea at the Nore; and he is thus in a position to answer every question likely to be asked, and to direct the attention of all to those features which can add to the interest of the journey.

He will, therefore, be enabled to produce a work which shall be at once pleasant to read, of real practical use to those who take a holiday on the river—whose numbers increase every year—and form a beautiful and lasting record of such a holiday, and a special memento for those who take an interest in the river, its scenery, its history, and associations.

The writer has but shortly returned from his journey from its source to the sea, and the information which he will give will not only deal with its historical associations, but will describe the river as it at present is.

There will be special sections dealing with the Amusements, Sports, Industries, &c., for which the river is celebrated; notice will be taken of the chief historical mansions and places neighbouring its banks; and there is no doubt but that "THE THAMES" will be found to give more information than any other work on the same subject. Its numerous illustrations will give a special interest and value to the useful and pleasantly written letterpress, and the book will be found worthy of a place on every table and in every library.

## CONDITIONS OF PUBLICATION.

The Work will be published in Five Divisions at 6s. each; or in Two Volumes, handsomely bound in cloth gilt, gilt edges, at 21s. each. Each Division will contain Seventy-two pages of descriptive matter, and Three Etchings or Steel Engravings. Each Volume will contain One Hundred and Eighty pages of descriptive matter, and Eight Etchings or Steel Engravings.

The size of the Work is Royal Quarto. It will be printed in the finest style, on special paper.

NO ORDER WILL BE RECEIVED FOR LESS THAN THE ENTIRE SET, and no order can be cancelled after acceptance without the consent of the Publishers.

SOLD TO SUBSCRIBERS ONLY.

LONDON: J. S. VIRTUE & CO., LIMITED, 294, CITY ROAD, AND 26, IVY LANE.

SUPPLEMENTARY WORK TO "THE UNIVERSAL GEOGRAPHY."

*In Four Divisions, cloth gilt, gilt edges, extra, at 10s. 6d. each.*

A NEW  
PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

BY ÉLISÉE RECLUS.

1.—THE EARTH: A Descriptive History of the Phenomena of the Life of the Globe.

2.—THE OCEAN: The Atmosphere, Meteors, and Life.

ILLUSTRATED WITH NEARLY 300 DIAGRAMS AND MAPS.

PRESS NOTICES.

"We have probably, on the whole, the most complete, detailed, and systematic account of the great facts in physical geography to be found in any single work. . . . The numerous illustrations and maps are very beautiful and all appropriate."—**Times**.

"A more attractive work on physical geography has rarely been written."—**Athenæum**.

"Two volumes which ought to be a mine of information to teachers as well as to the general reader. . . . We commend them heartily to the study of teachers desirous of rising above the old unprofitable level. They abound with excellent maps and illustrations."—**Saturday Review**.

"We cannot pretend to be able to estimate the scientific value of these truly wonderful and delightful volumes. . . . they are already well-known and valued contributions to the recognised body of scientific authority. . . . they will be delightful and entertaining reading to all those who, while not pretending to anything that can be fairly called scientific knowledge, can appreciate the wonders in common things which science has shown us, and can take an intelligent interest in the mode in which this knowledge has been arrived at. . . . As we turn through these volumes again, we feel it impossible to do anything like justice to their interest in the course of an article like the present, even by quotation."—**Spectator**.

"The illustrations and maps are as abundant and beautifully executed as in all the other works that come from M. Reclus' hands."—**Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society**.

"No more important work upon the same subject has appeared than the volumes by M. Reclus. . . . A perfectly illustrated scientific work has been produced."—**Scottish Geographical Magazine**.

"In both volumes an abundance of wood engravings are a great advantage to the lucidity of the text, and the coloured maps are numerous, careful, and beautifully engraved."—**Daily Telegraph**.

"Professor Keane is to be congratulated upon placing before the English reader so valuable a work. The numerous maps, printed in colours, which are included in these books, are clearly and accurately drawn."—**Morning Post**.

"An admirable faculty of arrangement and clear exposition. . . . peculiarly adapted to the setting forth of scientific knowledge in an attractive popular form. M. Reclus discourses in a way at once instructive and fascinating of the natural phenomena of water, earth, and air, and has thus succeeded in bringing an immense mass of information, which has commonly to be searched for in less inviting scientific books, within the reach and easy comprehension of the least ambitious general reader."—**Scotsman**.

"We know of no other work in our language in which so much knowledge of the 'Earth' and 'Ocean' is brought together as is the case here."—**Leeds Mercury**.

CONDITIONS OF PUBLICATION.

The Work will be published in Four Divisions, cloth gilt, gilt edges, extra, at 10s. 6d. each.

Each Division at 10s. 6d. will contain 250 pages of letterpress and twelve coloured maps.

The text throughout will be illustrated by smaller diagrams and maps.

The size of the work will be Imperial 8vo, printed on good paper, and in a clear readable type.

NO ORDER WILL BE RECEIVED FOR LESS THAN THE ENTIRE SET, and no order can be cancelled after acceptance without the consent of the Publishers.

SOLD TO SUBSCRIBERS ONLY.

LONDON: J. S. VIRTUE & CO., LIMITED, 294, CITY ROAD, AND 26, IVY LANE.

NEW AND ENLARGED EDITION.

*In Six Volumes, cloth gill, gilt edges, bevelled boards, at 15s. each.*

THE PICTORIAL  
HISTORY OF SCOTLAND.

By JAMES TAYLOR, M.A., D.D., F.R.S.A. EDIN.

ILLUSTRATED WITH SUPERIOR ENGRAVINGS ON STEEL

FROM DRAWINGS BY EMINENT ARTISTS.

*"The true history of a nation is not of its scars but of its households."*—RUSKIN.

THE history of a country should be the history of its inhabitants, and not a mere record of battles, court intrigues, and diplomatic treaties. A description of the manners and customs, industrial pursuits, and amusements of the mass of the people ought to be much more interesting and instructive than a record of the follies and crimes or even of the warlike exploits of their rulers. The early Scottish historians, however, devoted their attention mainly to fabulous narratives of the reigns of a long head-roll of apocryphal sovereigns, while the works of their successors are occupied with spirited sketches of character and picturesque descriptions of clan feuds and border forays, court revolutions, and ecclesiastical conflicts, intermingled with philosophical disquisitions characterised by great learning and critical acumen; but the history of the PEOPLE of Scotland has been to a great extent overlooked. Materials for such a history have accumulated in great abundance. The numerous works belonging to olden times which have been rescued from oblivion by the Bannatyne, Maitland, Spalding, and other kindred Societies, the volumes issued by the English Record Commission, and the mass of correspondence, public and private, deposited in our national repositories, and now thrown open to the public, have placed within reach of the historian the most ample means for enabling him to describe the pursuits, habits, literature, and religious opinions of our forefathers. It is noteworthy, also, that Scottish historians have, with only one or two exceptions, confined their attention to comparatively brief periods of the history of their country. Even Tyler's great work comprises a period of only three centuries and a half, from the reign of Alexander III. in 1242 to the Union of the Crowns in 1603; while, without encroaching on the domain of mere traditional fable, we may now rely upon an authentic history of nine hundred years.

Impressed by these considerations, the Publishers, thirty years ago, issued a work intended to form a history of the people as well as of the kingdom of Scotland, in which due prominence was given not only to public events, civil and military, but also to the condition of the people, their national industry and manners and customs. The preparation of the work was undertaken by Dr. Taylor, assisted by several eminent Scottish professors, who possessed a thorough knowledge of the subjects entrusted to them. The unprecedented sale of the history, not only in the United Kingdom, but in the British Colonies and America, afforded a gratifying proof that it had supplied a desideratum in our national literature.

Since the work was first issued, great additional light has been thrown upon many interesting portions of our national annals by the publication, under the charge of the Lord Clerk Registrar, of the Accounts of the Royal Chamberlains and Treasurers and the records of the Privy Council of Scotland, and by the laborious researches of Dr. Reeves and Dr. Skene into the constitution of the Celtic Church, and the tenure of land under the early Scottish kings. A considerable number of valuable works have also been printed for private circulation under the editorship of Dr. William Fraser, containing an account of great historical families of Scotland, with selections from their letters and other documents preserved in their archives, which furnish most interesting information respecting the habits of the nobles and the condition of the people. The Publishers have therefore resolved to issue a new and enlarged edition of the Pictorial History, embodying the information thus brought to light, and continuing the narrative down to the present day. The last volume, which is entirely new, will contain sketches of the agriculture and of the trade and commerce of Scotland during the last century; the manners, customs, and amusements of the people; extinct Scottish characters; the disruption of the Scottish Church, and the national system of education.

The Work will be copiously illustrated with appropriate engravings of scenes rendered famous by great historical events, portraits of eminent men, fac-similes of seals and coats-of-arm, &c.

CONDITIONS OF PUBLICATION.

The Work will be issued in Six Volumes, at 15s. each.

Each Volume will contain Four Hundred pages of Letterpress and Ten Steel Plates.

The size of the Work will be Demy Quarto.

NO ORDER WILL BE RECEIVED FOR LESS THAN THE ENTIRE SET, and no order can be cancelled after acceptance without the consent of the Publishers.

**SOLD TO SUBSCRIBERS ONLY.**

LONDON: J. S. VIRTUE & CO., LIMITED, 294, CITY ROAD, AND 26, IVY LANE.

A NEW AND IMPORTANT WORK

BY

OSCAR BROWNING, M.A.,

FELLOW OF KING'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, AND UNIVERSITY LECTURER;  
AND FELLOW OF THE ROYAL HISTORICAL SOCIETY.

---

THE NEW ILLUSTRATED  
HISTORY OF ENGLAND

FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES

TO

The Jubilee of Queen Victoria.

---

THIS work is designed as a family and general History of England, written in a popular style. Every fact or incident of importance in the Social, Political, and Religious life of the English people, from the earliest times to the present day, will be chronicled, and full advantage will be taken of the discoveries of modern scholarship. Whilst sufficiently erudite to be of service to the student, the entertaining and narrative form in which it is written will attract and interest the general reader.

It is divided into three parts, the first ending with the Accession of Henry VII., the second with the Revolution of 1688, and the third with the events of our own time. A sketch of the rise and development of the English constitution will be given at the end of the first part, and a short history of English literature at the end of the second part.

In the selection of the wood engravings, of which there are several hundred in the text, care has been taken that they should be of real assistance to the reader. They consist principally of Portraits of Notable Personages, views of Historic Castles and places of interest, Costumes and Coins from contemporary drawings, Maps, and Plans; the chief events in English history will also be fully illustrated by careful artists. In addition to the wood engravings there is a series of Portraits of the Kings and Queens of England, engraved on steel.

By the publication of calendars of state papers and other works by the Master of the Rolls, the knowledge of English history, especially of the early periods, has been revolutionised during the last thirty years. It is hoped that by the publication of the present work the results thus obtained may be brought within the reach of all classes of the English people.

---

CONDITIONS OF PUBLICATION.

The Work will be completed in Twenty Parts at 2s. each; or in Four Volumes, cloth gilt, at 12s. 6d. each.

Each Part will contain Sixty-four pages of Letterpress, profusely illustrated by Engravings on Wood, and Two Engravings on Steel; and each Volume will contain about Three Hundred and Twenty pages of illustrated Letterpress, and Ten Engravings on Steel.

The size of the Work is Imperial 8vo, and it will only be sold to Subscribers.

NO ORDER WILL BE RECEIVED FOR LESS THAN THE ENTIRE SET, and no order can be cancelled after acceptance without the consent of the Publishers.

---

LONDON: J. S. VIRTUE & CO., LIMITED, 294, CITY ROAD, AND 26, IVY LANE.